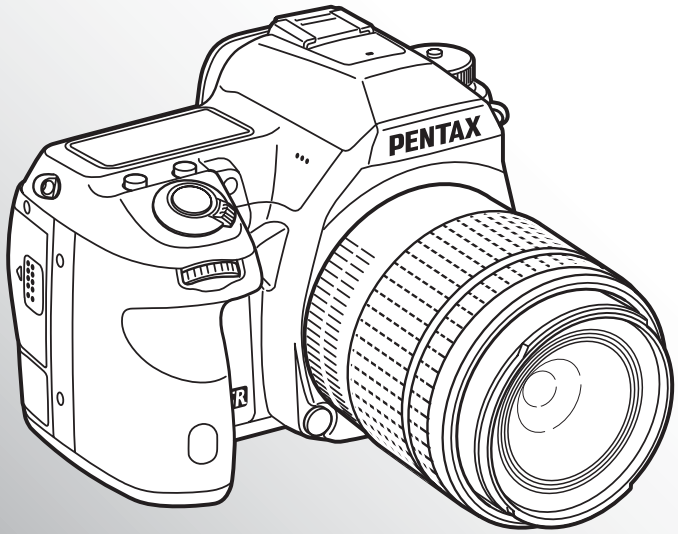
PENTAX

EN

SLR Digital Camera

K-5

Operating Manual



For optimum camera performance, please read the Operating Manual before using the camera.

Thank you for purchasing this PENTAX K-5 Digital Camera. Please read this manual before using the camera in order to get the most out of all the features and functions. Keep this manual safe, as it can be a valuable tool in helping you to understand all the camera's capabilities.

Lenses you can use

In general, lenses that can be used with this camera are DA, DA L, D FA and FA J lenses and lenses that have an **A** (Auto) position on the aperture ring. To use any other lens or accessory, see p.59 and p.337.

Regarding copyrights

Images taken using the K-5 that are for anything other than personal enjoyment cannot be used without permission according to the rights as specified in the Copyright Act. Please take care, as there are cases where limitations are placed on taking pictures even for personal enjoyment during demonstrations, performances or of items on display. Images taken with the purpose of obtaining copyrights also cannot be used outside the scope of use of the copyright as laid out in the Copyright Act, and care should be taken here also.

Regarding trademarks

PENTAX, K-5 and smc PENTAX are trademarks of HOYA CORPORATION.
PENTAX Digital Camera Utility and SDM are trademarks of HOYA CORPORATION.
Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries. Windows Vista is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
Macintosh and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
SDHC Logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.
This product includes DNG technology under license by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
The DNG logo is either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
HDMI, the HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
All other brands or product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies. However, the TM or ® marks are not used in all cases in this manual.

This product supports PRINT Image Matching III. PRINT Image Matching enabled digital still cameras, printers and software help photographers to produce images more faithful to their intentions. Some functions are not available on printers that are not PRINT Image Matching III compliant.
Copyright 2001 Seiko Epson Corporation. All Rights Reserved.
PRINT Image Matching is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.
The PRINT Image Matching logo is a trademark of Seiko Epson Corporation.

To users of this camera

- Do not use or store this device in the vicinity of equipment that generates strong electromagnetic radiation or magnetic fields. Strong static charges or the magnetic fields produced by equipment such as radio transmitters could interfere with the monitor, damage the stored data, or affect the product's internal circuitry and cause camera misoperation.
- The liquid crystal panel used in the monitor is manufactured using extremely high precision technology. Although the level of functioning pixels is 99.99% or better, you should be aware that 0.01% or fewer of the pixels may not illuminate or may illuminate when they should not. However, this has no effect on the recorded image.
- There is a possibility that the illustrations and the display screen of the monitor in this manual are different from the actual ones.
- In this manual, the generic term "computer(s)" refers to either a Windows PC or a Macintosh hereafter.
- In this manual, the term "battery(ies)" refers to any type of batteries used for this camera and its accessories.

For Using Your Camera Safely

We have paid close attention to the safety of this product. When using this product, we request your special attention regarding items marked with the following symbols.

⚠ **Warning**	This symbol indicates that violating this item could cause serious personal injuries.
⚠ **Caution**	This symbol indicates that violating this item could cause minor or medium personal injuries, or loss of property.

About the Camera

⚠ Warning

- Do not disassemble or modify the camera. High voltage areas are present inside the camera, with the risk of electric shock.
- If the camera interior is exposed due to dropping or otherwise damaging the camera, never touch the exposed portion. There is a risk of electric shock.
- Wrapping the strap around your neck is dangerous. Take care that small children do not hang the strap around their necks.
- Do not look directly at the sun through the camera with a telephoto lens attached, as viewing the sun may damage your eyes. Viewing the sun directly with a telephoto lens may lead to a loss of eyesight.
- If any irregularities occur during use, such as smoke or a strange odor, stop use immediately, remove the battery or the AC adapter, and contact your nearest PENTAX Service Center. Continuing to use the product can cause a fire or electric shock.
- Do not place your finger over the flash when discharging the flash. You may burn yourself.
- Do not cover the flash with clothing when discharging the flash. Discoloration may occur.

- Some portions of the camera heat up during use. There is a risk of low temperature burns when holding such portions for long periods.
- Should the monitor be damaged, be careful of glass fragments. Also, be careful not to allow the liquid crystal to get on your skin or in your eyes or mouth.
- Depending on your individual factors or physical condition, the use of the camera may cause itching, rashes or blisters. In case of any abnormality, stop using the camera and get medical attention immediately.

About the Battery Charger and AC Adapter

⚠ Warning

- Always use the battery charger and AC adapter exclusively developed for this product, with the specified power and voltage. Using a battery charger or AC adapter not exclusive to this product, or using the exclusive battery charger or AC adapter with an unspecified power or voltage can cause a fire, electric shock, or camera breakdown. The specified voltage is 100 - 240V AC.
- Do not disassemble or modify the product. This can cause a fire or electrical shock.
- If the generation of smoke or strange odor from the product or other abnormality occurs, immediately discontinue using and consult a PENTAX Service Center. Continuing to use the product can cause a fire or electric shock.
- If water should happen to get inside the product, consult a PENTAX Service Center. Continuing to use the product can cause a fire or electric shock.
- If thunderstorm should be present during use of the battery charger and AC plug cord, unplug the power plug and discontinue use. Continuing to use the product can cause damage to the equipment, fire or electrical shock.
- Wipe off the power plug if it should become covered with dust. Accumulated dust may cause a fire.
- To reduce the risk of hazards, use only CSA/UL certified power supply cord set, cord is Type SPT-2 or heavier, minimum NO.18 AWG copper, one end with a molded-on male attachment plug cap (with a specified NEMA configuration), and the other is provided with a molded-on female connector body (with a specified IEC nonindustrial type configuration) or the equivalent.

⚠ Caution

- Do not place or drop heavy objects on or forcefully bend the AC plug cord. Doing so may damage the cord. Should the AC plug cord be damaged, consult a PENTAX Service Center.
- Do not touch or short-circuit the terminal area of the AC plug cord while the cord is plugged in.
- Do not handle the power plug with wet hands. This can cause an electric shock.

- Do not drop the product, or subject it to violent impact. This can cause equipment breakdown.
- Do not use the battery charger to charge batteries other than the rechargeable lithium-ion battery D-LI90. Attempting to charge other types of batteries may cause an explosion or heating, or may damage the battery charger.

About the Battery

⚠ Warning

- If any leakage from the battery should come in contact with your eyes, do not rub them. Flush your eyes with clean water and get medical attention immediately.

⚠ Caution

- Only use the specified battery with this camera. Use of other batteries may cause an explosion or fire.
- Do not disassemble the battery. Disassembling the battery may cause an explosion or leakage.
- Remove the battery from the camera immediately if it becomes hot or begins to smoke. Be careful not to burn yourself during removal.
- Keep wires, hairpins, and other metal objects away from the + and - contacts of the battery.
- Do not short the battery or dispose of the battery in fire. This can cause an explosion or fire.
- If any leakage from the battery should come in contact with skin or clothes, it may cause irritation to the skin. Wash the affected areas thoroughly with water.
- Precautions for D-LI90 Battery Usage:
  USE SPECIFIED CHARGER ONLY.
  - DO NOT INCINERATE.
  - DO NOT DISASSEMBLE.
  - DO NOT SHORT CIRCUIT.
  - DO NOT EXPOSE TO HIGH TEMP. (140°F / 60°C)

Keep the Camera and its Accessories out of the Reach of Small Children

⚠ Warning

- Do not place the camera and its accessories within the reach of small children.
  1. If the product falls or is operated accidentally it may cause serious personal injuries.
  2. Wrapping the strap around a neck may cause suffocation.

3. To avoid the risk of a small accessory such as the battery or SD Memory Cards from being swallowed by mistake, keep them out of the reach of small children. Seek medical attention immediately if an accessory is accidentally swallowed.

Care to be Taken During Handling

Before Using Your Camera

- When traveling, take the Worldwide Service Network listing that is included in the package. This will be useful if you experience problems abroad.
- When the camera has not been used for a long time, confirm that it is still working properly, particularly prior to taking important pictures (such as at a wedding or when traveling). Contents of recording cannot be guaranteed if recording, playback or transferring your data to a computer, etc. is not possible due to a malfunction of your camera or recording media (SD Memory Card), etc.

About the Battery and Charger

- Storing the battery fully charged may decrease the battery performance. Avoid storing in high temperatures.
- If the battery is left inserted and the camera is not used for a long time, the battery will over-discharge and shorten the battery's usage life.
- Charging the battery a day before use or on the day of use is recommended.
- The AC plug cord provided with this camera is developed exclusively for the battery charger D-BC90. Do not use it with other devices.

Precautions on Carrying and Using Your Camera

- Do not subject the camera to high temperatures or high humidity. Do not leave the camera in a vehicle, as the temperature can get very high.
- Do not subject the camera to strong vibrations, shocks, or pressure. Use a cushion to protect the camera from vibrations of motorcycles, automobiles, or ships.
- The temperature range for camera use is -10°C to 40°C (14°F to 104°F).
- The monitor may appear black at high temperatures, but will return to normal at normal temperatures.
- The monitor may respond more slowly at low temperatures. This is due to liquid crystal properties, and is not a malfunction.
- Sudden temperature changes will cause condensation on the inside and outside of the camera. Place the camera in your bag or a plastic bag, and remove the camera after temperature of the camera and surroundings are equalized.

- Avoid contact with garbage, mud, sand, dust, water, toxic gases, or salt. These could cause the camera to breakdown. Wipe the camera to dry off any rain or water drops.
- Please do not press forcefully on the monitor. This could cause it to break or malfunction.
- Be careful not to overtighten the screw in the tripod socket when using a tripod.

Cleaning Your Camera

- Do not clean the product with organic solvents such as thinner, alcohol, or benzine.
- Use a lens brush to remove dust accumulated on the lens or viewfinder. Never use a spray blower for cleaning as it may damage the lens.
- Please contact a PENTAX Service Center for professional cleaning of the CMOS sensor. (This will involve a fee.)

Storing Your Camera

- Do not store the camera with preservatives or chemicals. Storage in high temperatures and high humidity can cause mold to grow on the camera. Remove the camera from its case and store it in a dry and well-ventilated place.

Other Precautions

- Periodic inspections are recommended every one to two years to maintain high performance.
- Refer to “Precautions When Using the SD Memory Card” (p.56) regarding the SD Memory Card.
- Please note that deleting data stored on an SD Memory Card, or formatting an SD Memory Card does not completely erase the original data. Deleted files can sometimes be recovered using commercially available software. It is the user’s responsibility to ensure the privacy of such data.

Regarding Product Registration

In order to better serve you, we request that you complete the product registration, which can be found on the CD-ROM supplied with the camera or on the PENTAX website. Refer to p.325 for details. Thank you for your cooperation.

Contents

For Using Your Camera Safely 1
Care to be Taken During Handling 4
Contents 6
Composition of the Operating Manual 13

Before Using Your Camera 15

K-5 Characteristics 16
Checking the Contents of the Package 18
Names and Functions of Working Parts 19
Capture Mode 20
Playback Mode 22
Display Indicators 24
Monitor 24
Viewfinder 35
LCD Panel 37
How to Change Function Settings 39
Using the Direct Keys 39
Using the Control Panel 40
Using the Menus 42
Using the Mode Dial 45

Getting Started 47

Attaching the Strap 48
Inserting the Battery 49
Charging the Battery 49
Inserting/Removing the Battery 50
Battery Level Indicator 52
Approximate Image Storage Capacity and Playback Time (Battery Fully Charged) 52
Using the AC Adapter (Optional) 53
Inserting/Removing an SD Memory Card 55
Recorded Pixels and Quality Level 57
Attaching a Lens 59
Adjusting the Viewfinder Diopter 61
Turning the Camera On and Off 62

Initial Settings 63
Setting the Display Language 63
Setting the Date and Time 67

Basic Operations 69

Basic Shooting Operation 70
Holding the Camera 70
Letting the Camera Choose the Optimal Settings 71
Using a Zoom Lens 76
Using the Built-in Flash 77
Setting the Flash Mode 77
Compensating for Flash Output 82
Playing Back Pictures 83
Playing Back Images 83
Deleting a Single Image 84

Shooting Functions 87

How to Operate the Shooting Functions 88
Direct Keys Setting Items 88
Rec. Mode Menu Setting Items 89
Custom Setting Menu Setting Items 91
Setting the Exposure 93
Effect of Aperture and Shutter Speed 93
Setting the Sensitivity 95
Reducing Image Noise (Noise Reduction) 98
Changing the Exposure Mode 100
Selecting the Metering Method 117
Adjusting Exposure 119
Locking the Exposure Before Shooting (AE Lock) 121
Focusing 122
Using the Autofocus 122
AF Fine Adjustment 126
Selecting the Focusing Area (AF Point) 127
Locking the Focus (Focus Lock) 130
Adjusting the Focus Manually (Manual Focus) 132
Checking the Composition, Exposure and Focus Before Shooting (Preview) 135
Selecting the Preview Method 135
Displaying the Optical Preview 137
Displaying the Digital Preview 138

Using the Shake Reduction Function to Prevent Camera Shake 139
Using the Shake Reduction Function 139
Shooting with Self-timer 143
Shooting with Remote Control (Optional) 145
Shooting with the Mirror Lock-up Function 149
Taking Pictures Continuously 151
Continuous Shooting 151
Interval Shooting 152
Multi-exposure 155
Shooting while Adjusting the Settings (Auto Bracketing) 157
Shooting while the Exposure is Automatically Changed (Exposure Bracketing) 157
Shooting while Adjusting Other Settings (Extended Bracketing) 160
Taking Pictures Using Digital Filters 162
Shooting with Live View 165
Setting Live View 166
Taking a Still Picture 168
Recording Movies 171
Changing the Movie Settings 171
Connecting a Microphone 173
Recording Movies 174
Playing Back Movies 177
Editing Movies 179

Using the Flash 181

Flash Characteristics in Each Exposure Mode 182
Using the Slow-speed Sync 182
Using the Trailing Curtain Sync 184
Distance and Aperture when Using the Built-in Flash 185
Lens Compatibility with the Built-in Flash 186
Using an External Flash (Optional) 187
Using P-TTL Auto Mode 188
Using High-Speed Flash Sync Mode 189
Using Flash in Wireless Mode 190
Connecting an External Flash with an Extension Cord 194
Multiple Flash Shooting Using Extension Cords 195
Contrast-Control-Sync Flash 196
X-sync Socket 197

Shooting Settings 199

Setting a File Format 200
Setting the JPEG Recorded Pixels 200
Setting the JPEG Quality Level 201
Setting a File Format 202
Setting the White Balance 205
Fine-tuning the White Balance 207
Adjusting the White Balance Manually 208
Adjusting the White Balance with Color Temperature 210
Setting the Color Space 212
Saving the White Balance Setting of a Captured Image 213
Correcting Images 214
Adjusting Brightness 214
Lens Correction 218
Adjusting the Composition 220
Setting the Image Finishing Tone 222
Setting Custom Image 222
Setting Cross Processing 225
Storing Frequently Used Settings 227
Saving the Settings 227
Checking the Saved USER Settings 229
Using Saved USER Settings 230
Changing the Settings 231
Resetting to Default Settings 232

Playback Functions 233

Playback Functions Operation 234
Playback Mode Palette Setting Items 234
Playback Menu Setting Items 235
Setting the Playback Display Method 236
Enlarging Images 237
Displaying Multiple Images 238
Multi-image Display Screen 238
Displaying Images by Folder 239
Displaying Images by the Shooting Date (Calendar Display) 240
Comparing Images 241
Joining Multiple Images (Index) 243
Playing Back Images Continuously 246
Setting the Slideshow Display 246
Starting the Slideshow 247

Rotating Images **249**
Deleting Multiple Images **250**
Deleting Selected Images 250
Deleting a Folder 252
Deleting All Images 253
Protecting Images from Deletion (Protect) **254**
Protecting a Single Image 254
Protecting All Images 255
Connecting the Camera to an AV Device **256**
Connecting the Camera to a Video Input Terminal 256
Connecting the Camera to an HDMI Terminal 258

Processing Images 261

Changing the Image Size **262**
Changing the Number of Recorded Pixels and Quality Level (Resize) 262
Cutting Out Part of the Image (Cropping) 263
Processing Images with Digital Filters **265**
Applying the Digital Filter 267
Recreating Filter Effects 268
Searching for the Original Image 270
Developing RAW Images **271**
Developing One RAW Image 271
Developing Multiple RAW Images 272
Specifying the Parameters 274

Changing Additional Settings 277

How to Operate the Set-up Menu **278**
Set-up Menu Setting Items 278
Formatting the SD Memory Card **281**
Customizing Buttons and Dials **282**
Setting the Function for the E-dials 282
Setting the Function for the Buttons 285
Setting the Beep, Date and Time, and Display Language **288**
Setting the Beep 288
Changing the Date and Time Display 289
Setting the World Time 289
Setting the Display Language 292
Adjusting the Monitor and the Menu Display **293**
Setting the Text Size 293

Setting the Guide Display Time 293
Setting the Initial Menu Tab Displayed 294
Setting the Status Screen Display 295
Setting the Display for Instant Review 296
Adjusting the Brightness of the Monitor 297
Adjusting the Color of the Monitor 298
Setting the Electronic Level Display 299

Setting the Folder/File Number 300
Changing the Naming System of the Folder 300
Creating New Folders 300
Selecting the File Number Setting 301
Setting the File Name 302

Selecting the Power Settings 304
Setting the Auto Power Off Function 304
Selecting a Battery 305

Setting the Photographer Information 307

Setting the DPOF Settings 309

Correcting Defective Pixels in the CMOS Sensor (Pixel Mapping) 311

Selecting Settings to Save in the Camera (Memory) 312

Connecting to a Computer 315

Manipulating Captured Images on a Computer 316

Saving Images on Your Computer 317
Setting the USB Connection Mode 317
Saving Images by Connecting Your Camera and Your Computer 318

Using the Provided Software 320
Installing the Software 320
Screens of the PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4 322

Appendix 327

Default Settings 328

Resetting the Menus 335
Resetting the Rec. Mode/Playback/Set-up Menus 335
Resetting the Custom Menu 336

Functions Available with Various Lens Combinations 337
Notes on [27. Using Aperture Ring] 339

Cleaning the CMOS Sensor 340
Removing Dust with Ultrasonic Vibrations (Dust Removal) 340

Detecting Dust on the CMOS Sensor (Dust Alert).....341
Removing Dust with a Blower.....343
Optional Accessories.....345
Error Messages.....351
Troubleshooting.....354
Main Specifications.....356
Glossary.....362
Index.....367
WARRANTY POLICY.....373

Composition of the Operating Manual

This Operating Manual contains the following chapters.

1 Before Using Your Camera

Explains camera characteristics, accessories and the names and functions of various parts.

2 Getting Started

Explains your first steps from purchasing the camera to taking pictures. Be sure to read this chapter and follow the instructions.

3 Basic Operations

Explains the procedures for taking and playing back pictures.

4 Shooting Functions

Explains the shooting-related functions.

5 Using the Flash

Explains how to use the built-in flash and external flashes.

6 Shooting Settings

Explains the procedures for configuring image processing and setting the file format.

7 Playback Functions

Explains the procedures for playing back, deleting, and protecting pictures.

8 Processing Images

Explains the procedures for changing the image size, applying digital filters and developing images taken in RAW format.

9 Changing Additional Settings

Explains the procedures for changing the camera settings, such as the monitor display settings and the image file naming convention.

10 Connecting to a Computer

Explains how to connect the camera to a computer, and includes installation instructions and a general overview of the provided software.

11 Appendix

Explains troubleshooting, introduces optional accessories and provides various resources.

The symbols used in this Operating Manual are explained below.

☞	Indicates reference page number explaining a related operation.
memo	Indicates useful information.
Caution	Indicates precautions to take when operating the camera.

1 Before Using Your Camera

Check the package contents and the names and functions of working parts before use.

K-5 Characteristics 16
Checking the Contents of the Package 18
Names and Functions of Working Parts 19
Display Indicators 24
How to Change Function Settings 39
Using the Mode Dial 45

K-5 Characteristics

- Features a 23.7×15.7 mm CMOS sensor with approximately 16.28 million effective pixels for high precision and a wide dynamic range.
- Features Shake Reduction (SR), an image sensor shifting shake reduction system. This enables you to capture sharp pictures with minimal camera shake regardless of the lens type.
- Features an AF sensor with 11 focusing points. The central 9 focusing points are wide cross area sensors.
- Features a viewfinder similar to that of a conventional 35 mm camera, with a magnification of approximately 0.92 and field of view of approximately 100%, for easier manual focusing. Also features a superimpose function in which the active AF point(s) on the viewfinder illuminate red.
- Features a large 3.0-inch monitor with approximately 921,000 dots, a wide viewing angle and brightness and color adjusting functions for high-precision viewing performance.
- Features a Live View function for shooting while viewing the subject in real-time on the monitor.
- Movies can be recorded by taking advantage of the lens properties. The camera can also output composite and HDMI video signals so that you can watch recorded images and movies on a TV or high-quality monitor.
- A user-friendly design has been implemented in various parts of the camera. The large text size, high-contrast monitor and easy-to-use menus make the camera easier to operate.
- The body exterior is magnesium alloy, and the dials, buttons, joints, and retractable parts of the camera are dust-proof and water-resistant.
- Features Dust Removal function to shake the CMOS sensor and remove the collected dust.
- Features Hyper-program and Hyper-manual modes that let you take pictures with the intended exposure. Also features Sensitivity Priority mode **Sv** that automatically adjusts aperture and shutter speed according to the set sensitivity, and Shutter & Aperture Priority mode **TAv** that automatically adjusts sensitivity according to the set aperture and shutter speed.
- Features Digital Filters to internally process the image in the camera. You can use digital filters such as Color or Soft while taking pictures or to process images after taking them.
- Features Custom Image which allows you to adjust settings while previewing the end result of the edited image, enabling a wider range of photographic expression.

- Records images in the versatile JPEG format or the high quality and fully editable RAW format. You can also select JPEG+RAW and record in both formats simultaneously. When the file format of the last captured image is JPEG, and its data still remains in the buffer memory, you can additionally save the image in RAW format. RAW images can be easily processed internally by the camera.
- Up to five setting patterns can be saved in **USER** mode. In addition, functions for the **RAW**/**Fx** button and the e-dials can also be customized, enabling speedy operation by any type of photographer.
- Supports the optional Battery Grip D-BG4 with vertical shutter release button. If a battery (D-LI90) is inserted in both the camera and grip, the battery with more power is prioritized. This enables you to get the best camera performance for an extended period. A menu item also allows you to prioritize a battery and use its full power before switching to the other battery.

Shake Reduction (SR)

Shake Reduction (SR) on the ***K-5*** features a PENTAX original system which uses magnetic force to move the image sensor at high speeds, compensating for camera shake.
The camera may generate some operating noise when it is shaken, such as when changing the composition of a picture. This is normal and not a malfunction.

The captured area (view angle) will differ between the ***K-5*** and 35 mm SLR cameras even if the same lens is used because the format sizes for 35 mm film and CMOS sensor are different.

Sizes for 35 mm film and CMOS sensor
35 mm film : 36×24 mm
K-5 CMOS sensor : 23.7×15.7 mm

The focal length of a lens used with a 35 mm camera is about 1.5 times longer than that of the ***K-5***. To shoot images with an angle of view framing the same area, divide the focal length of the 35 mm lens by 1.5.

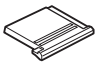
Example) To capture the same image as a 150 mm lens attached to a 35 mm camera
150÷1.5=100
Use a 100 mm lens with the ***K-5***.

Inversely, multiply the focal length of the lens used with the ***K-5*** by 1.5 to determine the focal length for 35 mm cameras.

Example) If 300 mm lens is used with the ***K-5***
300×1.5=450
Focal length is equivalent to a 450 mm lens on a 35 mm camera.

Checking the Contents of the Package

The following accessories are packaged with your camera.
Check that all accessories are included.

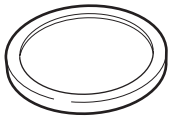


Hot shoe cover FK
(Installed on camera)

Eyecup FR
(Installed on camera)

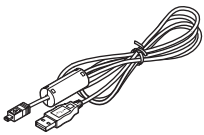
ME viewfinder cap

Sync socket 2P cap
(Installed on camera)

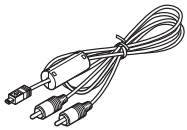


Body mount cover
(Installed on camera)

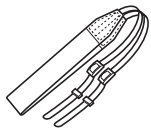
Triangular ring and protective cover
(Installed on camera)



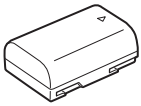
USB cable
I-USB7



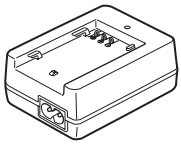
AV cable
I-AVC7



Strap
O-ST53

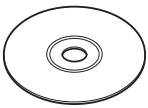


Rechargeable lithium-ion battery D-LI90



Battery charger
D-BC90

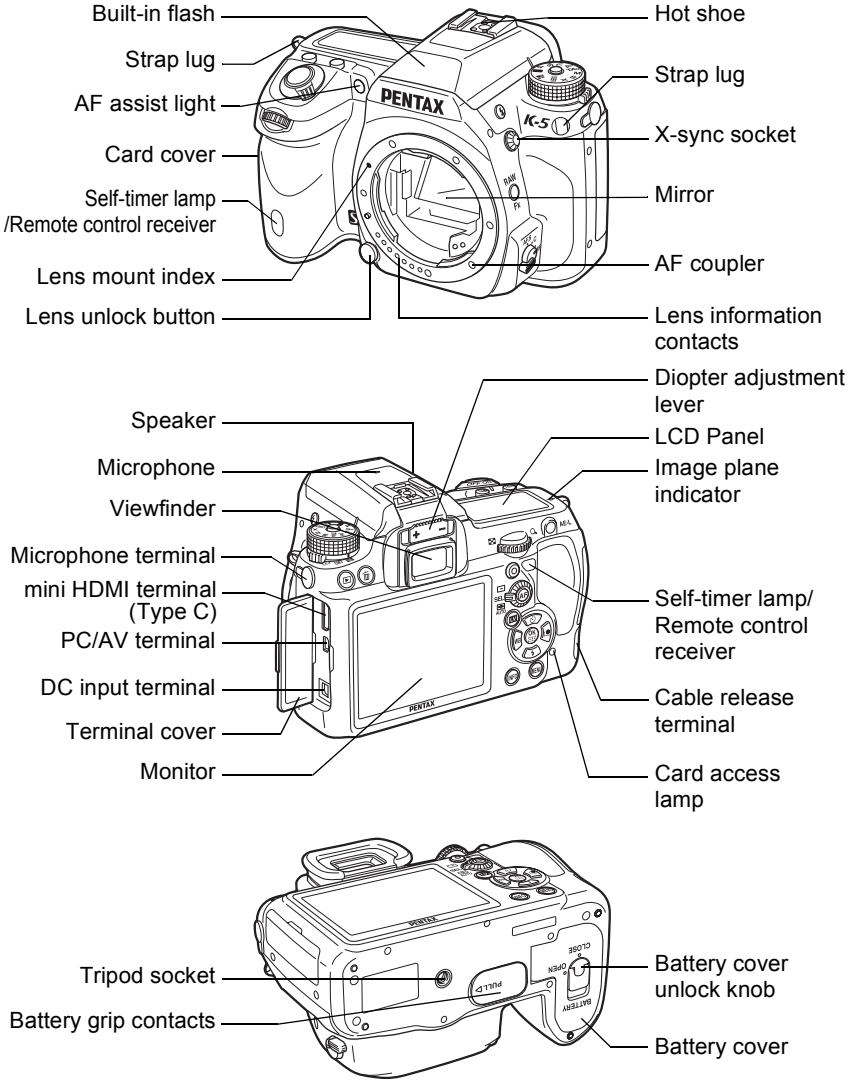
AC plug cord



Software (CD-ROM)
S-SW110

Operating Manual
(this manual)

Names and Functions of Working Parts

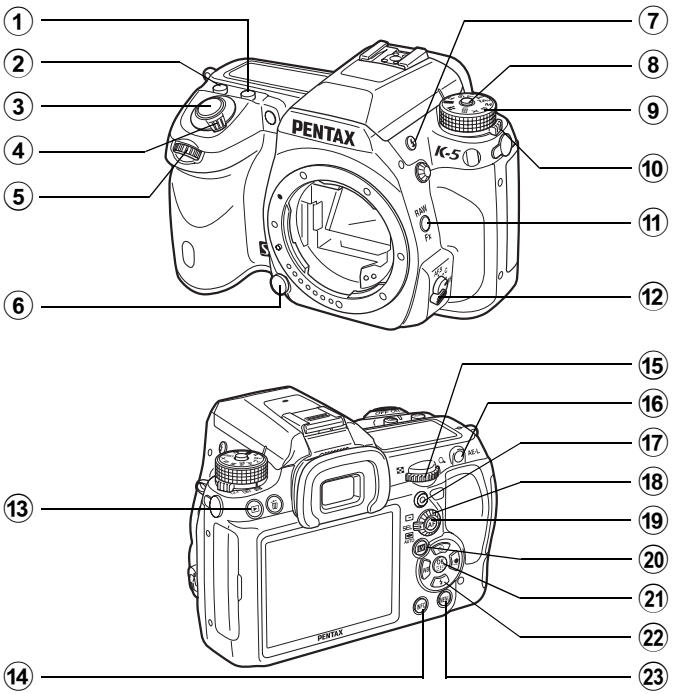


* In the first illustration, the camera is shown with the Hot shoe cover FK removed.

* In the second illustration, the camera is shown with the Hot shoe cover FK and the Eyecup FR removed.

Capture Mode

Functions of buttons, dials and levers used during shooting are noted.



① ± button

Turn the rear e-dial (👁) while pressing this button to set the EV compensation value. (p.119)

② ISO button

Turn the rear e-dial (👁) while pressing this button to set the ISO sensitivity. (p.95)

③ Shutter release button

Press to capture images. (p.72)

④ Main switch

Move to turn the power on/off (p.62) or to preview (p.135).

⑤ Front e-dial (👁)

Changes the settings.

⑥ Lens unlock button

Press to detach a lens. (p.60)

⑦ **ϟ button**

Press to pop up the built-in flash. (p.79)

⑧ **Mode dial lock button**

Press to allow the mode dial to be turned. (p.45)

⑨ **Mode dial**

Switches the exposure modes. (p.45)

⑩ **Metering mode switching lever**

Changes the metering method. (p.117)

⑪ **RAW/Fx button**

You can assign a function to this button. (p.285)

⑫ **Focus mode lever**

Switches between autofocus modes (**AF.S**/**AF.C**) (p.122) and manual focus mode (p.132).

⑬ **▶ button**

Switches to Playback mode. (p.83)

⑭ **INFO button**

Turns the status screen display on the monitor on/off. (p.25)

Switches to the control panel when the status screen is shown. (p.27)

⑮ **Rear e-dial (👁)**

Changes the settings.

⑯ **AE-L button**

Records the exposure before shooting (p.121) and saves a preview image.

⑰ **⊙ (Green) button**

Sets the exposure mode to Automatic Exposure and resets the settings.

⑱ **AF point switching dial**

Sets the focusing area. (p.127)

⑲ **AF button**

Sets the focusing area and temporarily provides manual focus. (p.124)

⑳ **LV button**

Displays a Live View image. (p.165)

㉑ **OK button**

When the control panel or a menu screen is displayed, press this button to confirm the selected item.

When the AF point switching dial is set to **SEL** (Select), press this button to enable or disable changing the AF point. (p.128)

㉒ **Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)**

Displays the Drive Mode/Flash Mode/White Balance/Custom Image setup menu. (p.88)

When the control panel or a menu screen is displayed, use this to move the cursor or change items.

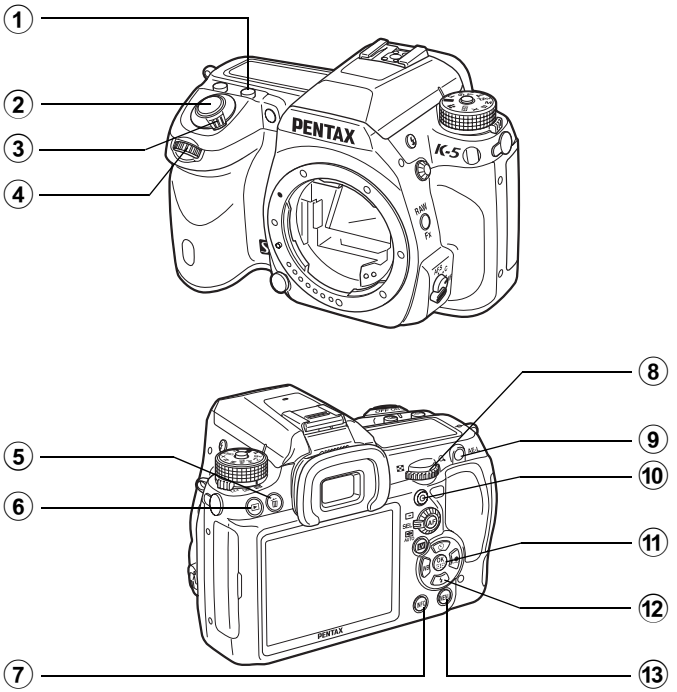
When the AF point switching dial is set to **SEL** (Select), use this to move the AF point. (p.128)

㉓ **MENU button**

Displays the [📷 Rec. Mode 1] menu (p.89). Next, press the four-way controller (▶) to display other menus.

Playback Mode

Functions of buttons, dials and lever used during playback are noted.



① **button**

Press in the enlarged view to increase the magnification. (p.237)

② **Shutter release button**

Press halfway to switch to Capture mode.

③ **Main switch**

Move to turn the camera on and off. (p.62) Set to the position to switch to Capture mode and preview.

④ **Front e-dial ( )**

Use this to display the next or previous image.

⑤ **button**

Press to delete images. (p.84)

⑥ **button**

Press to switch to Capture mode.

⑦ **INFO button**

Press to display the shooting information on the monitor. (p.29)

⑧ **Rear e-dial ( )**

Use this to change the magnification in the enlarged view (p.237) or display multiple images at the same time (p.238).

⑨ **AE-L button**

When the file format of the last captured image is JPEG, and its data still remains in the buffer memory, press this button to additionally save the image in RAW format. (p.84)

⑩ **(Green) button**

Press in the enlarged view to decrease the magnification. (p.237)

⑪ **OK button**

Confirms the setting you selected in the menu screen or playback screen.

⑫ **Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)**

When a menu screen or playback screen is displayed, use this to move the cursor or change items.

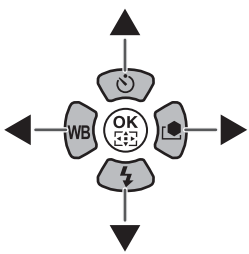
Press the four-way controller (▼) to display the playback mode palette. (p.234)

⑬ **MENU button**

Press to display the [Playback 1] menu (p.235). Next, press the four-way controller (▶) to display other menus.

References to Button Names

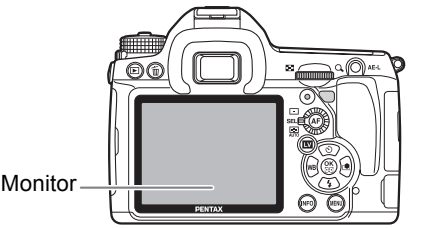
In this Operating Manual, the buttons of the four-way controller are referred to in the following way.



Display Indicators

Monitor

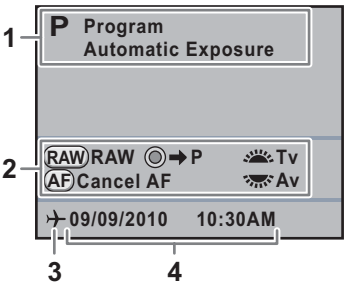
The various information appears on the monitor depending on the status of the camera.



memo The brightness and the color of the monitor can be adjusted. (p.297, p.298)

At Start-up or when Operating the Mode Dial

Guides appear on the monitor for 3 seconds (default setting) when the camera is switched on or the mode dial is turned.



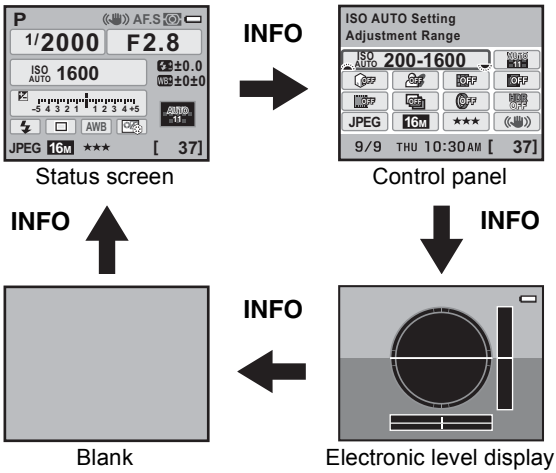
1 Exposure Mode (p.100)
2 Guide indicator
3 World Time (p.289)
4 Current date and time (p.67)

* 3 appears only when [World Time] is set to [Destination].

memo
- Select [Off] for [Guide Display] in the [Set-up 1] menu to not show guides. (p.293)
- When the mode dial is set to **USER**, the screen for selecting the USER mode is displayed for 30 seconds regardless of the [Guide Display] setting.

Capture Mode

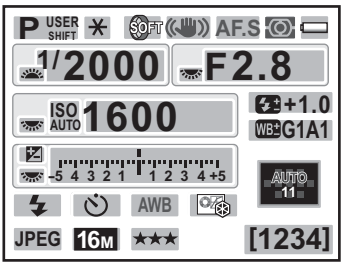
While shooting, the status screen is displayed showing the current shooting function settings. You can change the type of the screen displayed by pressing the **INFO** button.

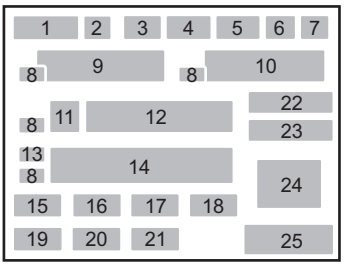


memo [Electronic Level] is □ (Off) by default. Set in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu. (p.299)

● Status screen

(All items are displayed here for explanatory purposes. The actual display may differ.)

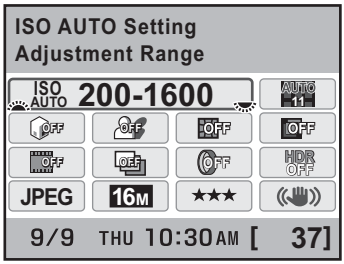


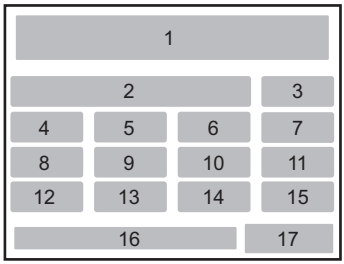


1 Exposure Mode (p.100)
2 AE Lock (p.121)
3 Interval Shooting (p.152)/Multi-exposure (p.155)/Extended Bracketing (p.160)/Digital Filter (p.162)/HDR Capture (p.215)
4 Shake Reduction (p.140)/Horizon Correction (p.140)
5 Focus Mode (p.122)
6 Metering Method (p.117)
7 Battery level (p.52)
8 E-dial guide
9 Shutter speed
10 Aperture value
11 ISO/ISO AUTO
12 Sensitivity (p.95)
13 EV Compensation (p.119)/Exposure Bracketing (p.157)
14 EV bar
15 Flash Mode (p.77)
16 Drive Mode (p.88)
17 White Balance (p.205)
18 Custom Image (p.222)
19 File Format (p.202)
20 JPEG Recorded Pixels (p.200)
21 JPEG Quality (p.201)
22 Flash Exposure Compensation (p.82)
23 White Balance fine-tuning (p.207)/Cross Processing (p.225)
24 AF point (p.127)
25 Remaining image storage capacity/⦿ button guide

● Control panel

Press the **INFO** button in the status screen to display the control panel and change settings.





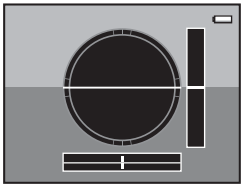
1 Function name
2 ISO AUTO Setting (p.96)
3 AUTO AF Point Setting (p.127)
4 Highlight Correction (p.214)
5 Shadow Correction (p.214)
6 Distortion Correction (p.218)
7 Lateral Chromatic Aberration Adjustment (p.218)
8 Cross Processing (p.225)
9 Extended Bracketing (p.160)
10 Digital Filter (p.162)
11 HDR Capture (p.215)
12 File Format (p.202)
13 JPEG Recorded Pixels (p.200)
14 JPEG Quality (p.201)
15 Shake Reduction/ Horizon Correction (p.140)
16 Current date and time
17 Remaining image storage capacity

- Settings that cannot be changed due to the current camera setup cannot be selected.
- When [Status Screen] (p.295) in the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu is set to □ (Off), the status screen is not displayed. The control panel turns on and off each time the **INFO** button is pressed.
- On the status screen, the setting currently being changed or guide display for the buttons that can be operated are displayed in blue (when [Status Screen] (p.295) in the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu is set to [Display Color 1]).
- The status screen will disappear if no operations are made within 30 seconds. Press the **INFO** button to display it again.
- If no operations are made within 30 seconds in the control panel, the status screen will reappear.
- [9999] is the maximum number of recordable images that can be displayed on the status screen and in the control panel. Even if the number of recordable images is 10,000 or more, [9999] is displayed.

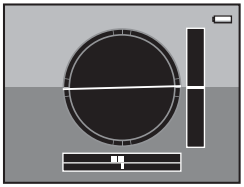
Electronic level display

This camera is equipped with an electronic level for detecting whether the camera is level. When [Electronic Level] is set to ☑ (On), press the **INFO** button while the control panel is displayed to view the electronic level. When [Electronic Level] is assigned to the **RAW**/**Fx** button, press the **RAW**/**Fx** button to switch the display on/off.
A bar graph indicating the horizontal camera angle appears at the bottom of the screen, and a bar graph indicating the vertical camera angle appears on the right side.

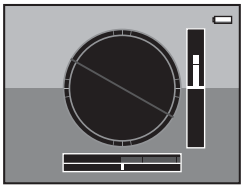
Example:



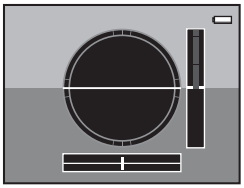
Horizontally and vertically level (green)



Tilted 1.5° to the left (yellow)
Vertically level (green)



Outside horizontal level display (red)
Tilted 5° up (yellow)

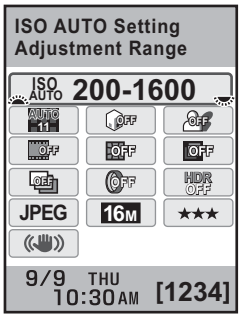


Horizontally level (green)
Outside vertical level display (red)

- [Electronic Level] is □ (Off) by default. Set in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu. (p.299)
- Refer to p.285 for assigning a function to the **RAW**/**Fx** button.
- The electronic level display will disappear if no operations are made within 1 minute.
- If the camera angle cannot be detected, both ends and the center of the bar graphs flash red.

When holding the camera vertically

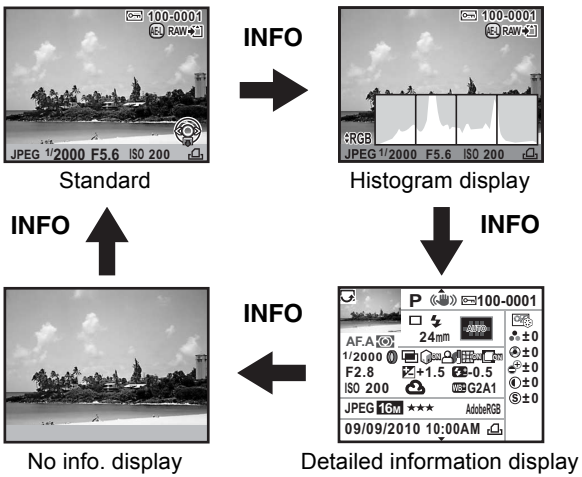
If the camera is held vertically while measuring the brightness, the status screen or control panel is displayed vertically. The directions of the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) also change to match the orientation of the camera.
To always display the contents of the screen horizontally, set in [Status Screen] of the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu. (p.295)



Playback Mode

The camera switches the types of information display when you press the **INFO** button during playback.

Standard	Captured image, file format, and guides are displayed.
Histogram display	Captured image and histogram (Brightness/RGB) are displayed. Not available during movie playback. (p.32)
Detailed information display	Detailed information on how and when the image was taken is displayed. (p.30)
No info. display	Only captured image is displayed.



Standard
Histogram display
No info. display
Detailed information display

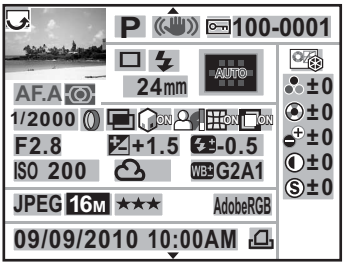
The type of information display that is shown first during playback is the same as that of the last playback in the previous session. If [Playback Info Display] is set to □ (Off) in [Memory] (p.312) of the [Rec. Mode 5] menu, the [Standard] screen is always displayed first when the camera is turned on.

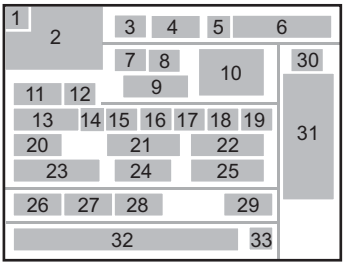
● Detailed information display

Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to switch between pages.

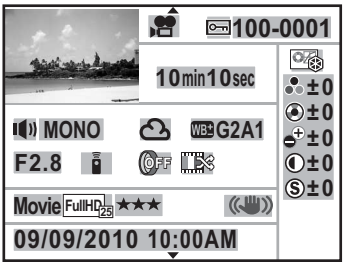
Page 1

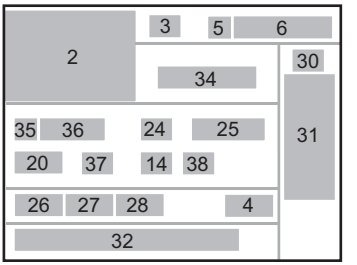
Still Picture





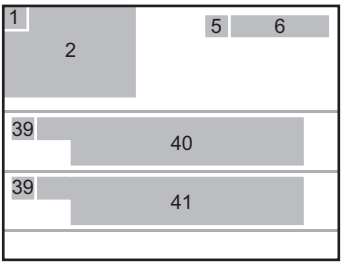
Movie





Page 2

Still Picture/Movie

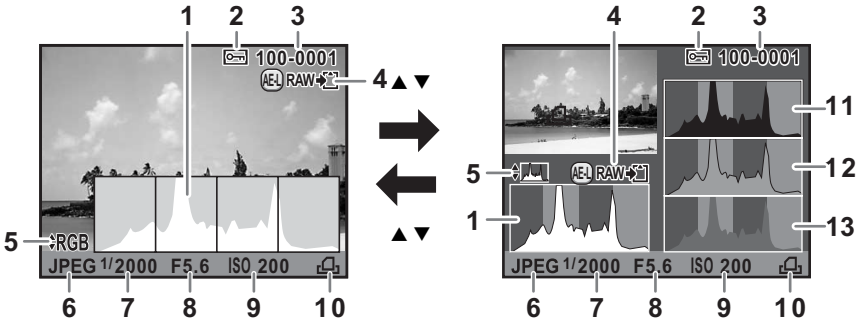


1 Rotation information (p.249)
2 Captured image
3 Exposure Mode (p.89)
4 Shake Reduction/ Horizon Correction (p.140)
5 Protect (p.254)
6 Folder number-File number (p.300)
7 Drive Mode (p.88)
8 Flash Mode (p.77)
9 Focal Length
10 AF point (p.127)/ Autofocus Method (p.166)
11 Focus Mode (p.122)
12 Metering Method (p.117)
13 Shutter speed
14 Digital Filter (p.162)
15 Extended Bracketing (p.160)/ HDR Capture (p.215)/ Multi-exposure (p.155)/ Cross Processing (p.225)
16 Highlight Correction (p.214)
17 Shadow Correction (p.214)
18 Distortion Correction (p.218)
19 Lateral Chromatic Aberration Adjustment (p.218)
20 Aperture value
21 EV Compensation (p.119)
22 Flash Exposure Compensation (p.82)
23 Sensitivity (p.95)
24 White Balance (p.205)
25 White Balance fine-tuning (p.207)
26 File Format (p.202)
27 Recorded Pixels (p.171, p.200)
28 Quality Level (p.171, p.201)
29 Color Space (p.212)
30 Image finishing tone (p.222)
31 Custom Image parameters (p.222)
32 Shooting date and time
33 DPOF settings (p.309)
34 Recording time
35 Sound setting (p.172)
36 Sound type
37 Drive Mode (Remote Control)
38 Cross Processing (p.225)
39 Information tampering warning
40 Photographer (p.307)
41 Copyright Holder (p.307)

* For images taken during Live View using Face Detection AF or Contrast AF, the autofocus method is displayed for indicator 10.
* Indicators 8 and 22 appear only for images taken with the flash.
* Indicators 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 33, and 38 appear only for images taken with the corresponding functions enabled.
* Indicators 27 and 28 do not appear for RAW images.
* Indicator 39 appears only for images whose information was tampered.

● **Histogram display**

The following histograms can be displayed when playing back still pictures. The “Brightness histogram” shows the distribution of brightness and the “RGB histogram” shows the distribution of color intensity. Press the four-way controller (▲▼) to switch between “Brightness histogram” and “RGB histogram”.



1	Histogram (Brightness)	**7**	Shutter speed
2	Protect	**8**	Aperture value
3	Folder number-File number	**9**	Sensitivity
4	Additionally saving in RAW format	**10**	DPOF settings
5	Switch RGB histogram/ Brightness histogram	**11**	Histogram (R)
6	File Format	**12**	Histogram (G)
		13	Histogram (B)

* Indicator 2 appears only for protected images.

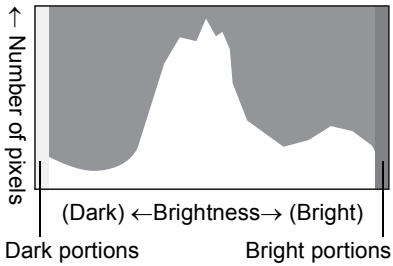
* Indicator 4 appears only when the file format of the last captured image is JPEG, and its data still remains in the buffer memory. (p.84)

memo

If [Bright/Dark Area] (p.236) in the [▶ Playback 1] menu is set to ☑ (On), areas affected by bright or dark portions blink (except when in RGB histogram display and Detailed information display).

Using the Histogram

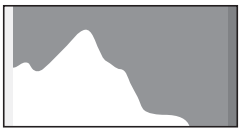
A histogram shows the brightness distribution of an image. The horizontal axis represents brightness (dark at the left and bright at the right) and the vertical axis represents the number of pixels.
The shape and the distribution of the histogram before and after shooting tells you whether the exposure level and contrast are correct or not, and lets you decide if you need to adjust the exposure and take a picture again.



☞ Adjusting Exposure (p.119)
☞ Adjusting Brightness (p.214)

Understanding Brightness

When the brightness is correct and there are no overly bright or dark areas, the graph peaks in the middle. If the image is too dark, the peak is on the left side, and if it is too bright, the peak is on the right side.


Dark image

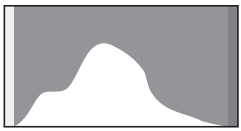
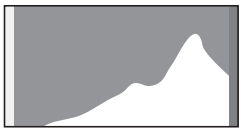


Image with few bright or dark areas


Bright image

When the image is too dark, the part to the left is cut off (dark portions with no detail) and when the image is too bright, the part to the right is cut off (bright portions with no detail).
Bright portions blink red and dark portions blink yellow on the monitor when [Bright/Dark Area] is ☑ (On).

☞ Playing Back Images (p.83)
☞ Setting the Playback Display Method (p.236)
☞ Setting the Display for Instant Review (p.296)

Understanding Color Balance

Distribution of color intensity is displayed for each color in the RGB histogram. The right side of the graphs look similar for images that have White Balance adjusted well. If only one color is lopsided to the left, that color is too intense.

☞ Setting the White Balance (p.205)

Guide Indicators

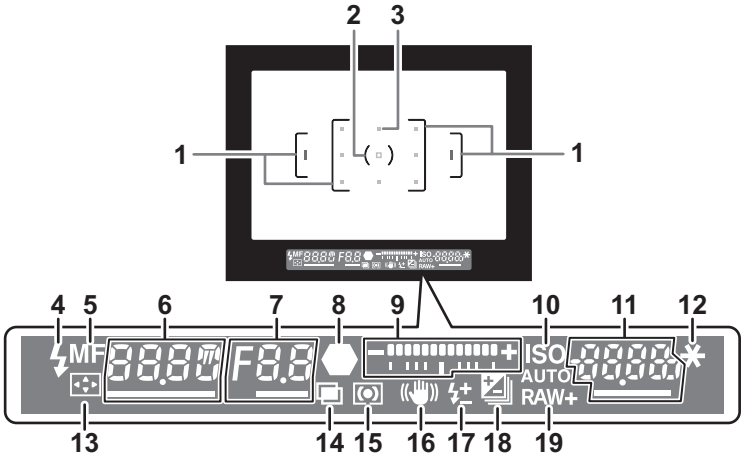
The following indicators appear on the monitor to indicate the keys, buttons and e-dials that can be operated at that time.

Example:

▲	Four-way controller (▲)	OK	**OK** button
▼	Four-way controller (▼)	⦿	Green button
◀	Four-way controller (◀)	AEL	**AE-L** button
▶	Four-way controller (▶)	🗑	🗑 button
	Front e-dial	SHUTTER	Shutter release button
	Rear e-dial	RAW Fx	**RAW**/**Fx** button
MENU	**MENU** button		

Viewfinder

The following information appears in the viewfinder.



1 AF frame (p.61)

2 Spot metering frame (p.118)

3 AF point (p.127)

4 Flash indicator (p.77)

Lit: when the flash is available.
Blinks: when the flash is recommended but not set or is being charged.

5 Focus Mode (p.132)

Appears when the focus mode is set to **MF**.

6 Shutter speed

Underlined when the shutter speed can be adjusted.
Displays a countdown of processing time when the Noise Reduction function is activated. (p.98)

7 Aperture value

Underlined when the aperture value can be adjusted.
[**nr**] blinks when the Noise Reduction function is activated. (p.98)

8 Focus indicator (p.72)

Lit: when the subject is focused.
Blinks: when the subject is not in focus.

9 EV bar

Displays the EV compensation values or difference between the appropriate and current exposure values when the exposure mode is set to **M** or **X**. (p.119)
Displays the camera angle when [Electronic Level] is ☑ (On). (p.38)

10 ISO/ISO AUTO
Appears when the sensitivity is displayed.

11 Sensitivity/Remaining image storage capacity
Underlined when the sensitivity can be adjusted.
Displays the number of recordable images immediately after shooting.
Displays the compensation value while adjusting the EV compensation.
Displays the amount of deviation from the correct exposure when the exposure mode is set to **M** or **X** and [Electronic Level] is set to ☑ (On). (p.114)

12 AE Lock (p.121)
Appears while the AE Lock function is activated.

13 Changing AF point (p.128)
Appears when the AF point can be changed with the AF point switching dial set to **SEL** (Select).

14 Multi-exposure (p.155)
Appears when Multi-exposure is set.

15 Metering Method (p.117)
Appears when the metering method is ⊙ (Center-weighted metering) or ⊡ (Spot metering).

16 Shake Reduction (p.139)
Appears when the Shake Reduction function is activated.

17 Flash Exposure Compensation (p.82)
Appears when the flash exposure compensation is in use.

18 EV Compensation (p.119)/Exposure Bracketing (p.157)
Appears when adjusting the EV compensation or when the drive mode is set to [Exposure Bracketing].

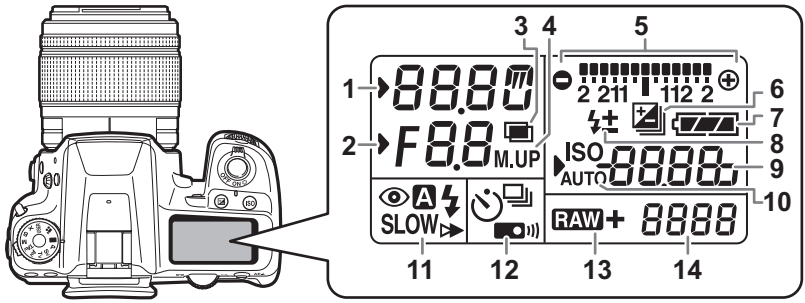
19 File Format (p.202)
Displays the image save format in RAW/RAW+ format.
Not displayed in JPEG format.

memo

- The AF point(s) in use for autofocus appear in red (Superimpose AF Area) when the shutter release button is pressed halfway. (p.127)
- When [Cancel AF] is assigned to [AF Button] in [Button Customization] of the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu, **MF** is displayed in the viewfinder while the **AF** button is pressed. (p.124)
- [9999] is the maximum number of recordable images that can be displayed in the viewfinder. Even if the number of recordable images is 10,000 or more, [9999] is displayed.

LCD Panel

The following information appears in the LCD panel on top of the camera.



1 Shutter speed/
Countdown of Noise Reduction processing time (p.98)

2 Aperture value
nr : Noise Reduction is activated (p.98)

3 Multi-exposure (p.155)

4 Mirror Lock-up Shooting (p.149)

5 EV bar (p.119)/
Electronic Level (p.38)

6 EV Compensation (p.119)/
Exposure Bracketing (p.157)

7 Battery level (p.52)

8 Flash Exposure Compensation (p.82)

9 Sensitivity/EV compensation value

10 ISO/ISO AUTO
Appears when the sensitivity is displayed.

11 Flash Mode (p.77)
- ϟ : Built-in flash is ready (when blinking, flash should be used)
- 👁 : Red-eye Reduction
- **A** : Auto Flash Discharge
- **SLOW** : Slow-speed Sync
- ▷▶ : Trailing Curtain Sync
- **W** : Wireless

12 Drive Mode (p.88)
- □ : Single Frame Shooting
- ⧉ : Continuous Shooting
- ⏲ : Self-timer Shooting
- ■)) : Remote Control Shooting

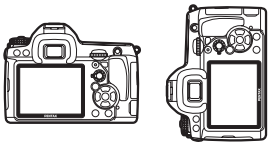
13 File Format (p.202)
- **RAW** : RAW capture
- **RAW+** : RAW+JPEG capture

14 Remaining image storage capacity/USB Connection mode (p.317)
- **Pc-S** : MSC mode
- **Pc-P** : PTP mode

memo LCD panel is illuminated when the exposure metering is performed. You can choose [High], [Low] or [Off] for LCD panel backlight in [22. LCD Panel Illumination] of the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu (p.92).

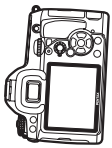
Electronic level display

When the camera is not level, a bar graph indicating the horizontal camera angle is displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel.



When level (at 0°)

When tilted 5° to the left



When held vertically and tilted 3° to the right

memo

- [Electronic Level] is □ (Off) by default. Set in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu. (p.299)
- The composition can also be adjusted in the camera when the camera is stabilized using a tripod. (p.220)

How to Change Function Settings

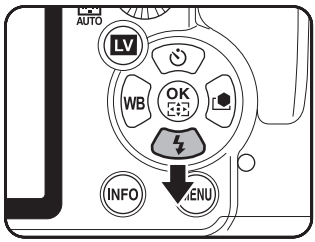
Function settings can be changed using the direct keys, control panel or menus. Some functions can be changed using both the control panel and menus.
This section explains the basic ways to change function settings.

Using the Direct Keys

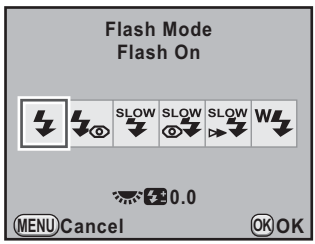
In Capture mode, you can set Drive Mode, Flash Mode, White Balance and Custom Image by pressing the four-way controller (▲▼◄►). (p.88)
Below, how to set [Flash Mode] is explained as an example.

1 Press the four-way controller (▼) in Capture mode.

The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

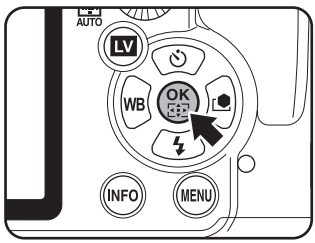


2 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select a flash mode.



3 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.



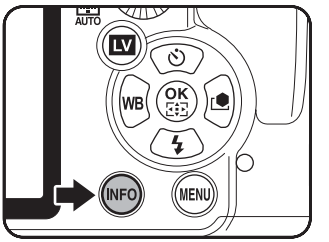
memo While direct key operation is enabled, the guide indicators for the direct keys are displayed in blue (when [Status Screen] (p.295) in the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu is set to [Display Color 1]). Direct key operation is not available when the AF point switching dial is set to **SEL** and the AF point is being changed. In such cases, press and hold the **OK** button. (p.129)

Using the Control Panel

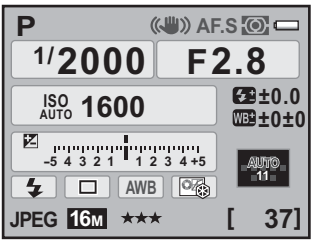
While shooting, the current settings can be checked on the status screen. You can also switch the display to the control panel and change settings. Following, how to set [JPEG Quality] is explained as an example.

1 Check the status screen and then press the INFO button.

The control panel appears.

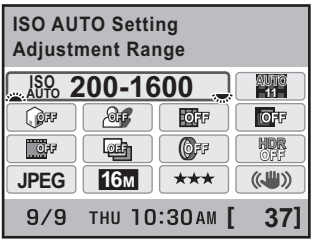


Press the **INFO** button when the status screen is not displayed.

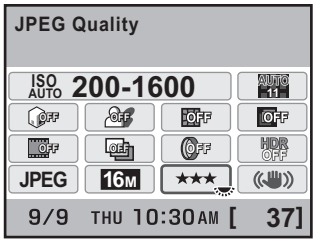


2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select an item you want to change the setting for.

You cannot select items that cannot be changed in a given camera status.

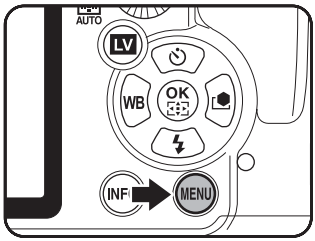


3 Use the front e-dial (◌) or rear e-dial (◌) to change the setting.



4 Press the MENU button.

The camera returns to the status screen and is ready to take a picture.



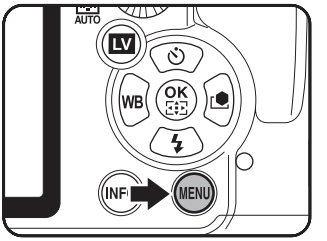
memo

- Press the **OK** button in Step 3 to display the detailed setting screen for the selected item. Make the detailed settings for functions such as Extended Bracketing and Digital Filter on the detailed setting screen.
- The status screen and control panel are not displayed when Live View (p.165) is displayed. Make or change necessary settings in the [📷 Rec. Mode] menu in advance.

Using the Menus

This section explains how to use the menus: [📷 Rec. Mode], [▶ Playback], [🔧 Set-up] and [**C** Custom Setting] menus. Following, how to set [Program Line] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 3] menu is explained as an example.

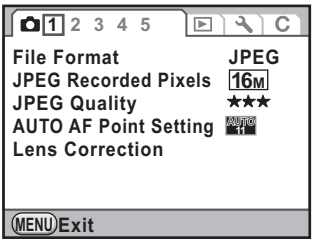
1 Press the MENU button in Capture mode.



The [📷 Rec. Mode 1] menu appears on the monitor.

If the **MENU** button is pressed in Playback mode, the [▶ Playback 1] menu appears.

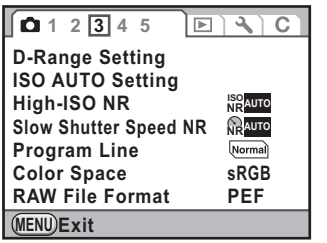
2 Press the four-way controller (▶) twice or turn the rear e-dial (🔄) two clicks to the right (toward 🔍).



Each time the four-way controller (▶) is pressed, the menu will change in the following sequence: [📷 Rec. Mode 2], [📷 Rec. Mode 3], [📷 Rec. Mode 4], [📷 Rec. Mode 5], [▶ Playback 1] … [📷 Rec. Mode 1].

When the front e-dial (🔄) is turned to the right, the menu will change in the following sequence: [📷 Rec. Mode 1], [▶ Playback 1], [🔧 Set-up 1], [**C** Custom Setting 1].

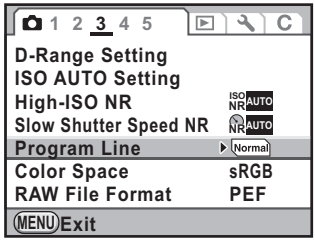
3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to choose an item.



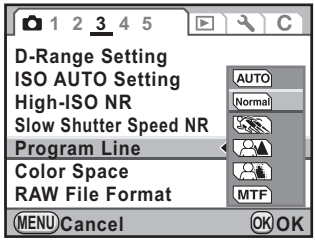
4 Press the four-way controller (▶).

Available settings are displayed.

The frame moves to the pop-up menu if there is one. When there is a submenu, it is displayed.



5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a setting.

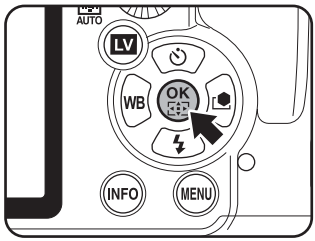


6 Press the OK button.

The setting is saved.

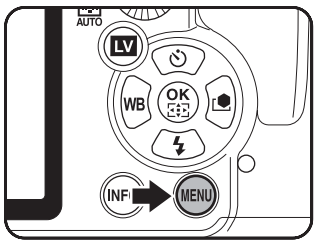
Press the **MENU** button if a submenu is displayed.

Next, set other items.



7 Press the MENU button.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.



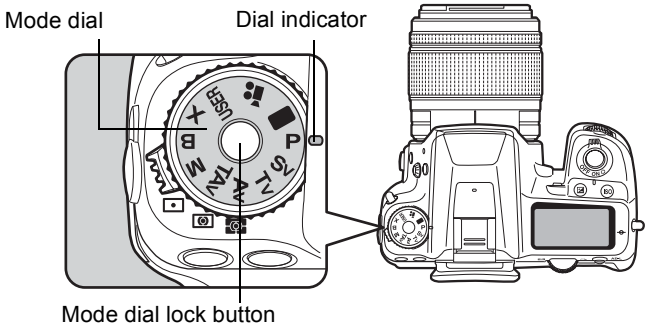
Caution

Even after you press the **MENU** button and close the menu screen, your settings will not be saved if the camera is turned off improperly (such as by removing the battery while the camera is on).

- You can select whether to display the menu tab selected the last time first, or to always display the [Rec. Mode 1] menu first. (p.294)
- Refer to the following pages for details on each menu.
  - [Rec. Mode] menu ☞p.89
  - [Playback] menu ☞p.235
  - [Set-up] menu ☞p.278
  - [**C** Custom Setting] menu ☞p.91

Using the Mode Dial

You can switch the exposure modes by setting the icons on the mode dial to the dial indicator.
Turn the mode dial while pressing the mode dial lock button.



Mode	Characteristics	Page
USER	Lets you capture images with the saved exposure mode. Up to five settings can be saved.	p.227
■ Green	Lets you capture images with fully automatic settings.	p.103
P Hyper-program	Automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain a proper exposure according to Program Line when taking pictures. You can use the front and rear e-dials to switch between shutter priority and aperture priority.	p.104
Sv Sensitivity Priority	Automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain a proper exposure according to the set sensitivity.	p.105
Tv Shutter Priority	Lets you set the desired shutter speed for expressing the movement of the subject.	p.107
Av Aperture Priority	Lets you set the desired aperture value for controlling the depth of field.	p.109
TAv Shutter & Aperture Priority	Automatically sets the sensitivity to obtain a proper exposure with the set shutter speed and aperture value according to the brightness of the subject.	p.110
M Hyper-manual	Lets you set the shutter speed and aperture value to capture the picture with creative intent.	p.112

Mode	Characteristics	Page
B Bulb	Lets you capture images that require slow shutter speeds such as fireworks and night scenes.	p.115
X Flash X-sync Speed	The shutter speed is locked at 1/180 second. Use this when using an external flash that does not automatically set the sync speed.	p.116
🎥 Movie	Use this to record movies.	p.174

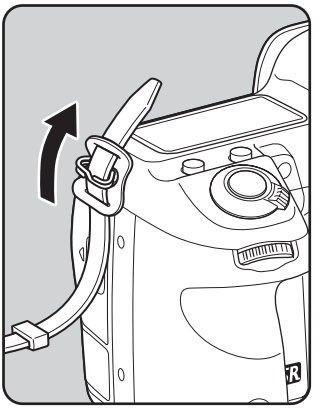
2 Getting Started

This chapter explains your first steps from purchasing the camera to taking pictures. Be sure to read it and follow the instructions.

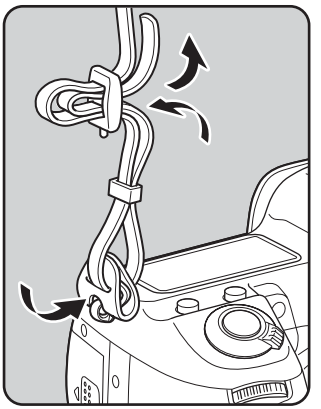
Attaching the Strap 48
Inserting the Battery 49
Inserting/Removing an SD Memory Card 55
Attaching a Lens 59
Adjusting the Viewfinder Diopter 61
Turning the Camera On and Off 62
Initial Settings 63

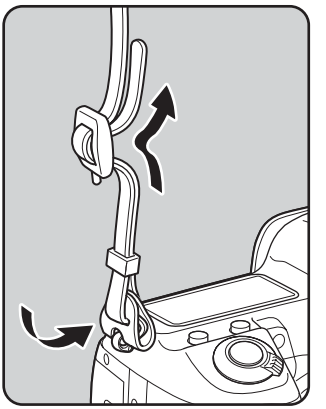
Attaching the Strap

1 **Pass the end of the strap through the protective cover and triangular ring.**



2 **Secure the end of the strap on the inside of the clasp.**





3 **Attach the other end of the strap in the same manner as described above.**

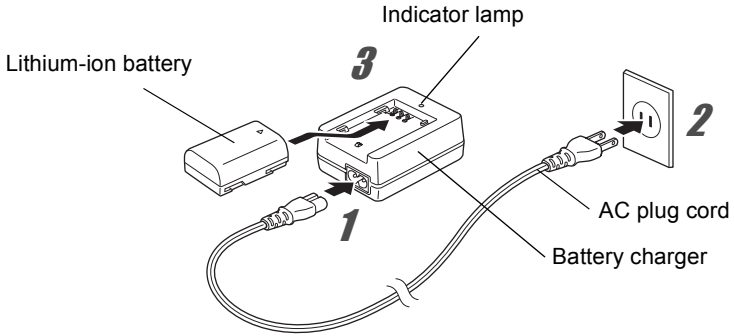
Inserting the Battery

Insert the battery into the camera. Use only a D-LI90 battery.

Charging the Battery

When using the battery for the first time, or when the battery has not been used in a long time, or when [Battery depleted] appears, recharge the battery.

Note: AC plug cord "Listed, Type SPT-2 or NISPT-2, 18/2 flexible cord, rated 125 V, 7A, minimum 6ft (1.8m)"



1 Connect the AC plug cord to the battery charger.

2 Plug the AC plug cord into the power outlet.

3 Face the ▲ mark on the exclusive battery up and insert it into the battery charger.

The indicator lamp is lit during charging and turns off when the battery is fully charged.

4 When the battery is fully charged, remove the battery from the battery charger.

Caution
- Do not use the provided battery charger D-BC90 to charge batteries other than rechargeable lithium-ion battery D-LI90. Charging other batteries may cause damage or heating.
- If the battery is correctly oriented and inserted into the battery charger but the indicator lamp is not lit, the battery is faulty. Use a new battery in the camera.

memo
- The maximum charging time is approximately 390 minutes (it depends on temperature and remaining battery power.) Charge in a location where the temperature is between 0°C and 40°C.
- If battery usage time is reduced even when properly charged, the battery has reached the end of its life. Use a new battery in the camera.

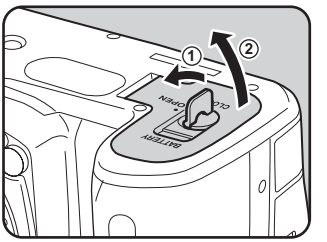
Inserting/Removing the Battery

When using the battery for the first time, charge the battery and insert it into the camera.

Caution
- Do not open the battery cover or remove the battery while the power is on.
- Remove the battery when you will not use the camera for a long while. The battery may leak.
- If the date and time settings have been reset when you install a new battery after a long time has passed since the battery was removed, follow the procedure for “Setting the Date and Time” (p.67).
- Insert the battery correctly. Batteries inserted incorrectly may cause a camera breakdown. Wipe the electrodes of the battery with a soft dry cloth before inserting.
- Be careful as the camera or battery may become hot when the camera is used continuously for a long period of time.

1 Open the battery cover.

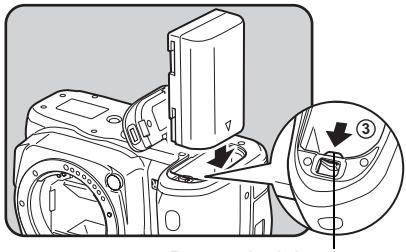
Lift the battery cover unlock knob, turn it towards OPEN (①) to unlock, and then pull the cover open (②).



2 Face the ▲ mark on the battery towards outside of the camera, push the battery lock lever in the direction of the arrow (③) and insert the battery.

Insert until the battery locks.

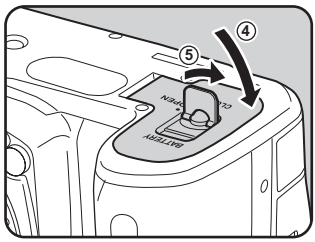
To remove the battery, push the battery lock lever in the direction of the arrow (③) with your finger. Remove the battery when it pops out slightly.



Battery lock lever

3 Close the battery cover (④) and turn the battery cover unlock knob towards CLOSE (⑤) to lock.

Stow the battery cover unlock knob after closing the battery cover.



memo Use the AC adapter kit K-AC50 (optional) when using the camera for a prolonged period. (p.53)

Battery Level Indicator

You can confirm remaining battery level by checking the ■/▰ displayed on the status screen and LCD panel.

Status Screen	LCD Panel	Battery Level
■ (Green)	▰	Battery is full.
▰ (Green)	▰	Battery is close to full.
▱ (Yellow)	▱	Battery is running low.
■ (Red)	▱ lit	Battery is almost empty.
[Battery depleted]	▱ blinks	The camera turns off after displaying the message. (▱ continues blinking on the LCD panel.)

memo

- ▱, ■ (red), ▱ or ▱ may appear even when the battery level is sufficient if the camera is used at low temperatures or when performing continuous shooting for a long period of time. In this situation, turn the camera off and on again. If ■ or ▰ appears, you can use the camera.
- DC IN is displayed when using the AC adapter.

Approximate Image Storage Capacity and Playback Time (Battery Fully Charged)

Battery	(Temperature)	Normal Recording	Flash Photography		Playback Time
			50% Use	100% Use	
D-LI90	(23°C)	980	740	610	440 minutes
	(0°C)	810	680	560	400 minutes

The image storage capacity (normal recording, flash use 50%) is based on measuring conditions in accordance with CIPA standards, while other data is based on our measuring conditions. Some deviation from the above figures may occur in actual use depending on shooting mode and shooting conditions.

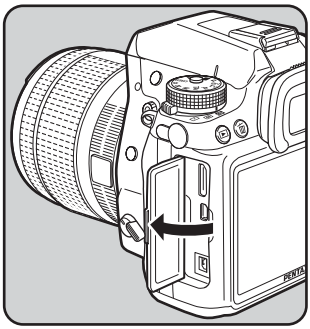
- Battery performance temporarily decreases as the temperature decreases. When using the camera in cold climates, have extra batteries on hand and keep them warm in your pocket. Battery performance will return to normal when returned to room temperature.
- Have extra batteries ready when traveling overseas, taking pictures in cold climates, or taking a lot of pictures.

Using the AC Adapter (Optional)

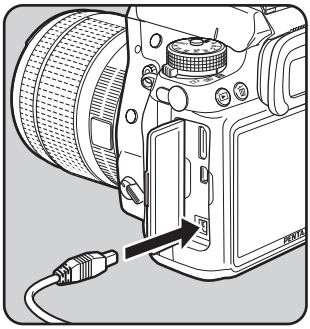
We recommend the use of the AC adapter kit K-AC50 (optional) when using the monitor for a long time or when connecting the camera to a computer or AV device.

1 **Make sure the camera is turned off.**

2 **Open the terminal cover.**



3 **Face the ▲ mark on the DC terminal of the AC adapter towards the ▲ mark on the camera, and connect the DC terminal to the DC input terminal of the camera.**



4 Connect the AC plug cord to the AC adapter.

5 Plug the AC cord into the power outlet.

Caution

- Make sure the camera is turned off before connecting or disconnecting the AC adapter.
- Make sure connections are secure between the terminals. SD Memory Card or data may be corrupted if disconnected while the card is being accessed.

memo

- Be sure to read the manual of the AC adapter kit K-AC50 when using the AC adapter.
- The battery in your camera will not charge when connected to the AC adapter.

Inserting/Removing an SD Memory Card

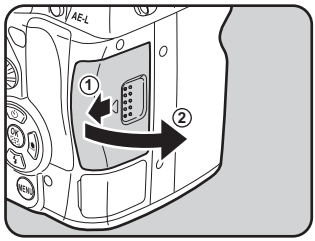
This camera uses either an SD Memory Card or an SDHC Memory Card (commercially available). Both cards are referred to as SD Memory Cards hereafter. Make sure the camera is turned off before inserting or removing the SD Memory Card.

Caution

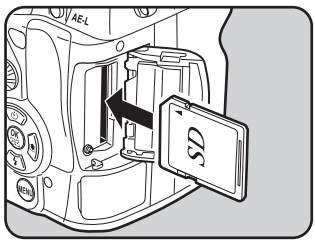
- Do not remove the SD Memory Card while the card access lamp is lit.
- Use this camera to format (initialize) an SD Memory Card that is unused or has been used on other cameras or digital devices. Refer to “Formatting the SD Memory Card” (p.281) for details on formatting.
- Use a high-speed memory card when recording movies. If a write speed cannot keep up with a recording speed, the writing may stop during recording.

1 Make sure the camera is turned off.

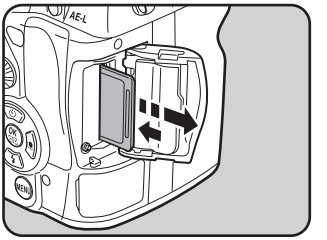
2 Slide the card cover in the direction of the arrow and then lift it to open (①→②).



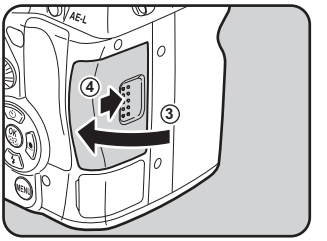
3 Insert the card all the way with the SD Memory Card label facing toward the monitor.



Push the SD Memory Card in once to remove.



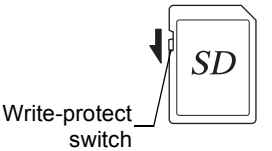
4 Close the card cover (③) and then slide it in the direction of the arrow (④).



Caution Be sure to fully close the card cover. The camera will not turn on if the card cover is open.

Precautions When Using the SD Memory Card

- The SD Memory Card is equipped with a write-protect switch. Setting the switch to LOCK prevents new data from being recorded on the card, the stored data from being deleted, and the card from being formatted by the camera or computer.



- The SD Memory Card may be hot when removing the card immediately after using the camera.
- Do not remove the SD Memory Card or turn off the power while the card is being accessed. This may cause the data to be lost or the card to be damaged.
- Do not bend the SD Memory Card or subject it to violent impact. Keep it away from water and store away from high temperatures.
- Do not remove the SD Memory Card while formatting. The card may be damaged and become unusable.
- Data on the SD Memory Card may be deleted in the following circumstances. We do not accept any liability for data that is deleted if
  (1) the SD Memory Card is mishandled by the user.
  (2) the SD Memory Card is exposed to static electricity or electrical interference.
  (3) the SD Memory Card has not been used for a long time.
  (4) the SD Memory Card or the battery is removed while the card is being accessed.

- If the SD Memory Card is not used for a long time, the data on the card may become unreadable. Be sure to regularly make a backup of important data on a computer.
- Avoid using or storing the card where it may be exposed to static electricity or electrical interference.
- Avoid using or storing the card in direct sunlight or in locations where it may be exposed to rapid changes in temperature or to condensation.
- Format new SD Memory Cards. Also format SD Memory Cards used with other cameras.
  ☞ Formatting the SD Memory Card (p.281)
- The data on your SD Memory Card should be managed at your own risk.

Recorded Pixels and Quality Level

When the File Format is JPEG

Choose the number of recorded pixels (size) and quality level (JPEG data compression rate) of pictures according to how you intend to use the pictures you have taken.
Pictures with larger recorded pixels or more stars (★) are clearer when printed. However, the number of pictures that can be taken (the number of pictures that can be recorded on an SD Memory Card) decreases with larger file sizes.
The quality of the captured photo or printed picture depends on the quality level, exposure control, resolution of the printer and a variety of other factors so you do not need to select more than the required number of pixels. For example, to print in postcard size, 2M (1728×1152) is adequate. Set the appropriate recorded pixels and quality level depending on how the picture will be used.

☞ Setting the JPEG Recorded Pixels (p.200)
☞ Setting the JPEG Quality Level (p.201)

● **JPEG Recorded Pixels, JPEG Quality and Approximate Image Storage Capacity**

(When using a 2 GB SD Memory Card)

JPEG Rec. Pixels \ JPEG Quality	★★★★ Premium	★★★ Best	★★ Better	★ Good
16M (4928×3264)	134	214	379	749
10M (3936×2624)	208	332	585	1138
6M (3072×2048)	339	543	945	1807
2M (1728×1152)	1041	1617	2793	5121

- The number of storable images may vary depending on the subject, shooting conditions, shooting mode and SD Memory Card, etc.

memo When the number of storable images exceeds 500, captured images are divided into folders containing 500 images each. However, in Auto Bracketing, images will be stored in the same folder until shooting is completed, even if the number of images exceeds 500.

When the File Format is RAW

With the ***K-5***, you can record in the versatile JPEG format or the high quality and editable RAW format. For RAW file format, you can select PENTAX's original PEF format or general-purpose DNG (Digital Negative) format designed by Adobe Systems. On a 2 GB SD Memory Card, you can record up to 58 images in either PEF or DNG format.

☞ Setting a File Format (p.202)

Attaching a Lens

Attach a proper lens to the camera's body.
When you use one of the following lenses with the K-5, all the camera's exposure modes will be available.

(a) DA, DA L, D FA, FA J lenses
(b) Lenses with an **A** (Auto) position, when used in the **A** position

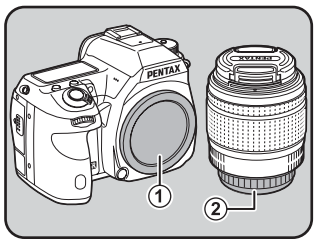
Caution Turn the camera off before attaching or removing the lens to prevent unexpected lens movement.

memo
- When lenses described in (b) are used in a position other than **A**, some functions will be restricted. Refer to "Notes on [27. Using Aperture Ring]" (p.339).
- With factory default setting, the camera will not work with lenses other than those listed above and accessories. Set [27. Using Aperture Ring] to [Permitted] in the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu to use them. (p.339)

1 Make sure the camera is turned off.

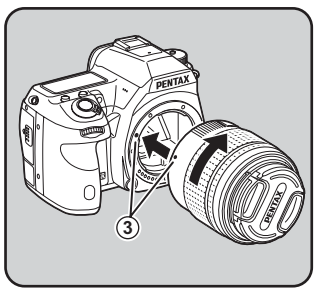
2 Remove the body mount cover (①) and lens mount cover (②).

Be sure to put the lens down with the lens mount side facing upward to protect the lens mount from damage.

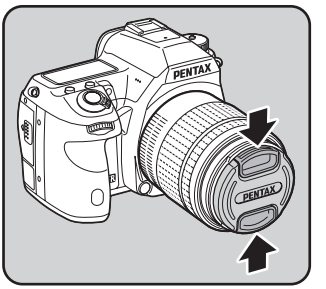


3 Align the Lens mount index (red dots; ③) on the camera and the lens, and secure by turning the lens clockwise until it clicks.

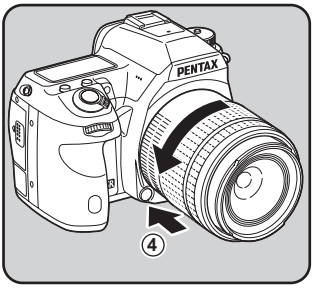
After attaching, turn the lens counterclockwise to check that the lens is locked in place.



4 Remove the front lens cap by pushing the indicated portions inward.



To detach the lens, hold down the lens unlock button (④) and turn the lens counterclockwise.



Caution

- We assume no responsibility nor liability for accidents, damages and malfunctions resulting from the use of lenses made by other manufacturers.
- The camera body and lens mount incorporate lens information contacts and an AF coupler. Dirt, dust, or corrosion may damage the electrical system. When necessary, clean the contacts with a soft dry cloth.

memo

The body mount cover (①) is a cover to prevent scratches and block dust when shipped. Body Mount Cap K is sold separately and has a lock function.

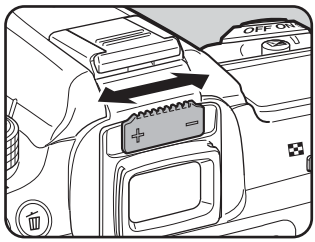
Adjusting the Viewfinder Diopter

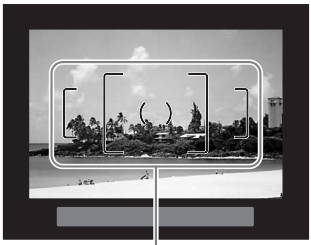
Adjust the viewfinder diopter to suit your eyesight.
If it is difficult to see the viewfinder image clearly, slide the diopter adjustment lever sideways.
You can adjust the diopter from approximately -2.5 to +1.5 m^{-1}.

1 Look through the viewfinder and slide the diopter adjustment lever left or right.

Adjust the lever until the AF frame in the viewfinder is focused.

Point the camera at a white wall or other bright and consistent surface.

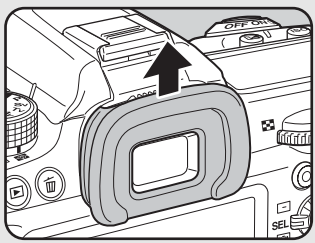




AF frame

memo

- The Eyecup FR is attached to the viewfinder portion when the camera leaves the factory. Diopter can be adjusted with the Eyecup FR attached. However, adjustment is easier with the eyecup removed.
- To remove the Eyecup FR, pull it out in the direction of the arrow.
  To attach the Eyecup FR, align it with the groove on the viewfinder eyepiece and push it into the position.
- If it is difficult to see the viewfinder image clearly even if you use the diopter adjustment lever, use the optional diopter correction lens adapter M. However, the Eyecup FR must be removed to use this adapter. (p.348)

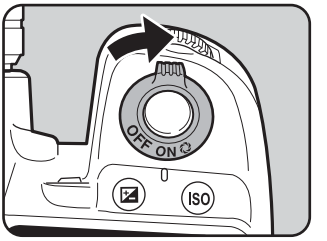


Turning the Camera On and Off

1 Turn the main switch to [ON].

The camera will turn on.

Set the main switch to the position [OFF] to turn off the camera.

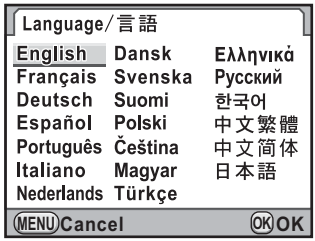


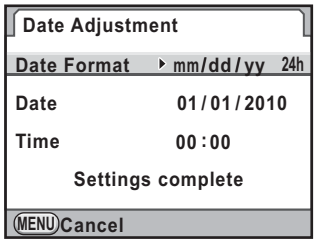
memo

- Always turn the camera off when not in use.
- The power will automatically turn off when you do not perform any operations within a set period of time. To reactivate the camera, turn it on again or perform any of the following.
  - Press the shutter release button halfway.
  - Press the ▶ button, **MENU** button or **INFO** button.
- By default, the camera is set to turn off automatically after 1 minute of inactivity. You can change the setting in [Auto Power Off] of the [🔧 Set-up 3] menu. (p.304)

The first time the camera is turned on after purchasing, the [Language/言語] screen appears on the monitor. Follow the procedure below to set the language displayed on the monitor and the current date and time. Once these settings are made, you will not need to set them again next time you turn on your camera.

If the [Date Adjustment] screen appears, set the date and time by following the procedure in “Setting the Date and Time” (p.67).

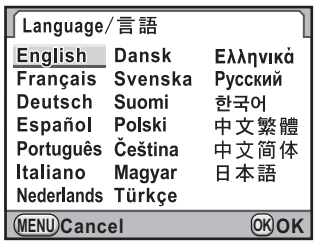




Setting the Display Language

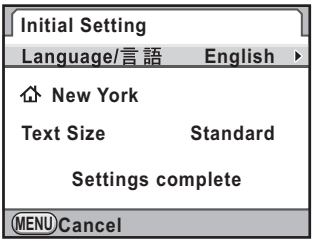
You can choose the language in which the menus, error messages, etc. are displayed from the following: English, French, German, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch, Danish, Swedish, Finnish, Polish, Czech, Hungarian, Turkish, Greek, Russian, Korean, Traditional Chinese, Simplified Chinese and Japanese.

1 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select the desired language.



2 Press the OK button.

The [Initial Setting] screen appears in the selected language.
Press the four-way controller (▼) twice and proceed to Step 10 on p.65 if ⌂ (Hometown) does not have to be changed.



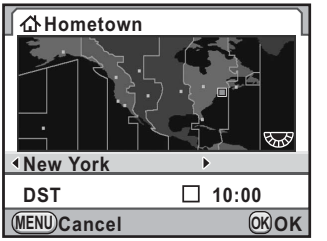
3 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The cursor moves to ⌂.

4 Press the four-way controller (▶).

The [⌂ Hometown] screen appears.

5 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select a city.



6 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The cursor moves to [DST] (daylight saving time).

7 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.

8 Press the OK button.

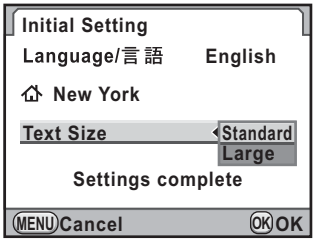
The camera returns to the [Initial Setting] screen.

9 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The cursor moves to [Text Size].

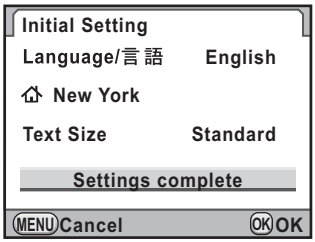
10 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Standard] or [Large].

Selecting [Large] increases the text size of the selected menu items.



11 Press the OK button.

12 Press the four-way controller (▼) to select [Settings complete].



13 Press the OK button.

The [Date Adjustment] screen appears.

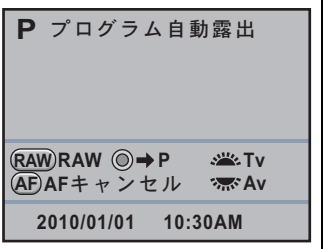
memo In this manual, the menu screens hereafter are described with [Text Size] set to [Standard].

When the Wrong Language is Set

If you mistakenly select the wrong language in the [Language/言語] screen and proceed to the [Date Adjustment] screen, you can perform the following operation to set the language back.
If you have proceeded to switch the camera to Capture mode (and the camera is ready to take a picture), perform the following operation from Step 2 to set the language back.

1 **Press the MENU button once to display the guides on the monitor.**

The screen shown on the right is an example of the guides displayed. The displayed screen will vary depending on the selected language.
The guides appear on the monitor for 3 seconds.



2 **Press the MENU button once.**

[📷 1] is displayed in the upper tab.

3 **Press the four-way controller (▶) six times.**

[🔧 1] is displayed in the upper tab.

4 **Press the four-way controller (▼) to select [Language/言語].**

5 **Press the four-way controller (▶).**

The [Language/言語] screen appears.

6 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select the desired language and press the OK button.**

The [🔧 Set-up 1] menu in the selected language appears.
Refer to the following pages and set the desired city for [Hometown] and the current date and time as necessary.

- To change the hometown: “Setting the World Time” (p.289)
- To change the date and time: “Changing the Date and Time Display” (p.289)

memo

- When the hometown and the date and time are not set, the [Initial Setting] screen or [Date Adjustment] screen will be displayed again next time the camera is turned on.
- If you have not proceeded to the [Date Adjustment] screen, you can reselect a language using the four-way controller (▶) in the [Language/言語] screen.

Setting the Date and Time

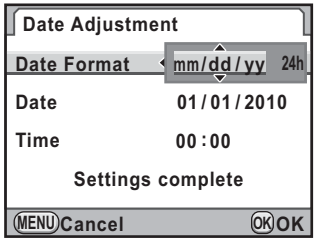
Set the current date and time and the display style.

1 Press the four-way controller (▶).

The frame moves to [mm/dd/yy].

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to choose the date format.

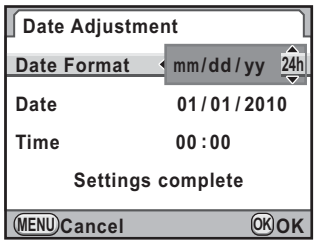
Choose [mm/dd/yy], [dd/mm/yy] or [yy/mm/dd].



3 Press the four-way controller (▶).

The frame moves to [24h].

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select 24h (24-hour display) or 12h (12-hour display).



5 Press the four-way controller (▶).

The frame returns to [Date Format].

6 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The frame moves to [Date].

7 Press the four-way controller (▶).

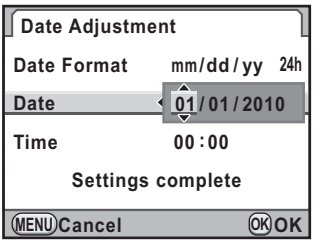
The frame moves to the month.

8 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to set the month.

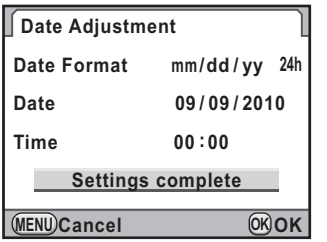
Set the day and year in the same manner.

Next, set the time.

If you select [12h] in Step 4, the camera switches between am and pm depending on the time.



9 Press the four-way controller (▼) to select [Settings complete].



10 Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the status screen and is ready to take a picture.

If you set the date and time from the menu, the screen will return to the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu. In this case, press the **MENU** button.

Caution

Pressing the **MENU** button while setting the date and time cancels the settings made up to that point and switches the camera to Capture mode. After initial settings are complete, if the camera power is turned off before the date and time settings are complete, the [Date Adjustment] screen will appear first next time you turn the camera on. In this case, you can also set the date and time from the menu later. (p.289)

memo

- When you press the **OK** button in Step 10, the seconds value is set to 0. To set the exact time, press the **OK** button when the time signal (on the TV, radio, etc.) reaches 0 seconds.
- You can change the language and date and time settings from the menu. (p.289, p.292)

3 Basic Operations

This chapter explains basic operations for shooting by setting mode dial to Green mode (automatic exposure according to the program line set to AUTO) to ensure successful capturing.

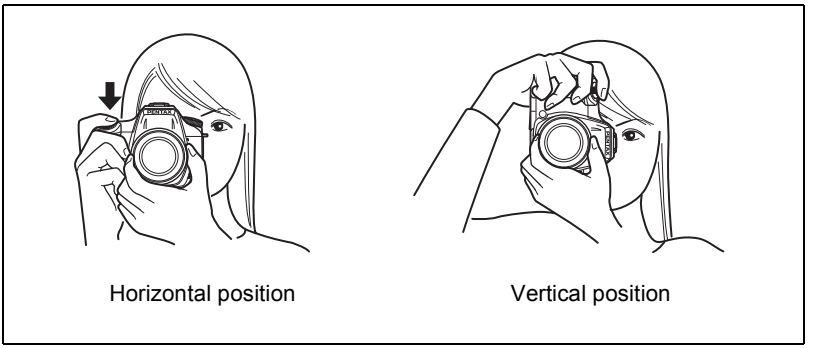
For information about advanced functions and settings for taking pictures, refer to chapter 4 and onward.

Basic Shooting Operation 70
Using a Zoom Lens 76
Using the Built-in Flash 77
Playing Back Pictures 83

Holding the Camera

How you hold the camera is important when taking pictures.

- Hold the camera firmly with both hands and keep your elbows close to your body.
- Press the shutter release button gently when taking a picture.



Horizontal position　　Vertical position

memo

- To reduce camera shake, support your body or the camera on a solid object such as a table, tree, or wall.
- Although there are individual differences among photographers, the slowest possible shutter speed for a handheld camera is generally 1/(focal length ×1.5). For example, it is 1/75 of a second for a focal length of 50 mm and 1/150 of a second for 100 mm. Use a tripod or the Shake Reduction function (p.139) when using a slower shutter speed.
- When using a telephoto lens, a tripod that is heavier than the total weight of the camera and lens is recommended to avoid camera shake.
- Do not use the Shake Reduction function when using the camera on a tripod. (p.139)

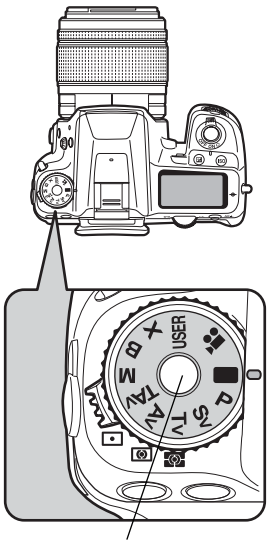
Letting the Camera Choose the Optimal Settings

The K-5 features various exposure modes, focus modes, and drive modes for expressing your photographic vision. This section explains how to take pictures by simply pressing the shutter release button.

1 Set the mode dial to ■.

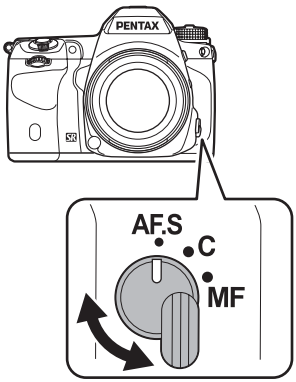
Turn the mode dial while pressing the mode dial lock button.

The exposure mode changes to ■ (Green) mode. In ■, a proper exposure is determined by the camera and the shutter speed and aperture value are automatically set.



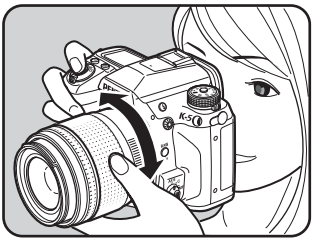
2 Set the focus mode lever to AF.S.

The focus mode changes to **AF.S** (Autofocus/Single) mode. When the shutter release button is pressed halfway in **AF.S**, the camera focuses automatically. (p.122)



3 Look through the viewfinder to view the subject.

A zoom lens can be used to change the size of the subject in the viewfinder. (p.76)

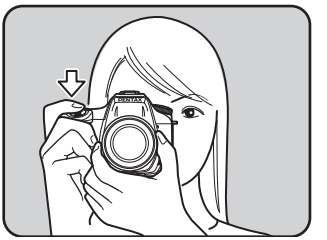


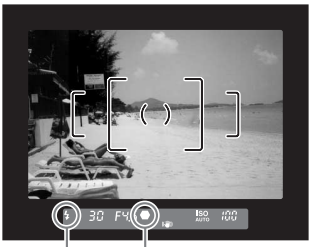
4 Position the subject inside the AF frame and press the shutter release button halfway.

The autofocus system operates. The focus indicator ● appears in the viewfinder when the subject comes into focus.

AF assist light turns on in a dark or backlit location, but the flash does not pop up automatically. If the flash is necessary, the flash status ϟ blinks in the viewfinder. Press the ϟ button to pop up the flash.

☞Operating the shutter release button (p.74)
☞Subjects that are difficult to focus on (p.75)
☞Using the Built-in Flash (p.77)
☞Selecting the Focusing Area (AF Point) (p.127)





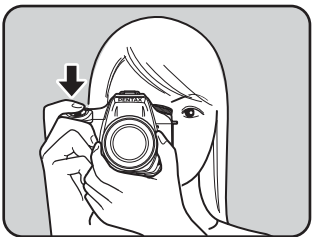
Flash status

Focus indicator

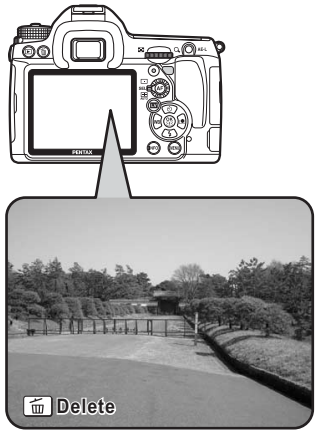
5 Press the shutter release button fully.

The picture is taken.

This action is referred to as “releasing the shutter” or “release”.



6 Review the captured image on the monitor.



The image appears for 1 second on the monitor shortly after capturing (Instant Review).

☞Setting the Display for Instant Review (p.296)

You can magnify the image during Instant Review with the rear e-dial (). (p.237)

You can delete the image during Instant Review by pressing the 🗑 button.

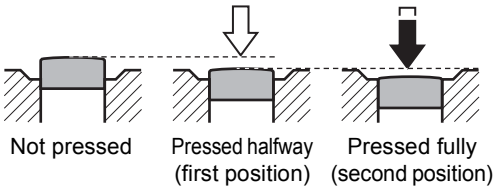
☞Deleting a Single Image (p.84)

memo

- Refer to p.103 for details on using ■ (Green) mode.
- You can set the camera so that pressing the **AF** button will focus automatically, in the same way as pressing the shutter release button halfway. (p.124)
- You can display the Optical Preview and check the composition, exposure, and focus before taking pictures. (p.135)

Operating the shutter release button

The shutter release button has two working positions.



Pressing it down halfway (first position) displays the indicators in the viewfinder and the autofocus system operates. Pressing it fully (second position) takes a picture.

memo

- Press the shutter release button gently when taking a picture to prevent camera shake.
- Practice pressing the shutter release button halfway/fully to learn where the first position and second position are.
- The viewfinder indicators are displayed while the shutter release button is pressed halfway. The indicators are displayed for about 10 seconds (default setting) while the exposure metering timer is on after you take your finger off the button. (p.35, p.118)

Subjects that are difficult to focus on

The autofocus mechanism is not perfect. Focusing may be difficult when taking pictures under the following conditions. These also apply to manual focusing using the focus indicator ● in the viewfinder.

(a) Extremely low-contrast subjects such as a white wall in the focusing area
(b) Subjects which do not reflect much light within the focusing area
(c) Fast moving objects
(d) Strongly reflected light or strong backlighting (bright background)
(e) If repeating vertical or horizontal line patterns appear within the focusing area
(f) Multiple subjects in the foreground and background within the focusing area

If the subject cannot be focused automatically, set the focus mode lever to **MF** and use the manual focus mode to focus on the subject with the aid of the matte field in the viewfinder. (p.133)

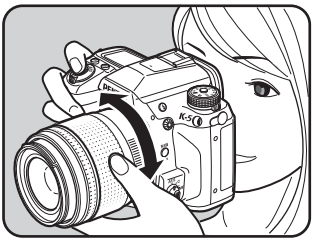
Caution The subject may not be focused even when the ● (focus indicator) is displayed when (e) and (f) above apply.

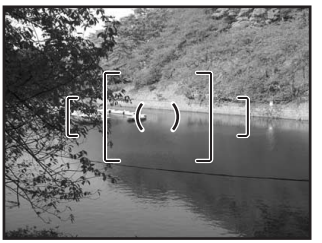
Using a Zoom Lens

Enlarge the subject (telephoto) or capture a wider area (wide angle) with a zoom lens. Adjust the subject to the desired size and take pictures.

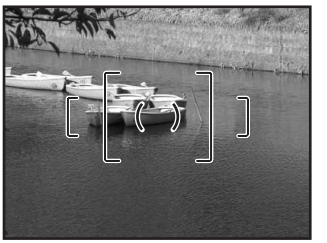
1 Turn the zoom ring to the right or left.

Turn the zoom ring clockwise for telephoto and counterclockwise for wide angle.





Wide Angle



Telephoto

memo

- The smaller the number displayed for the focal length, the wider the angle. The larger the number, the more magnified the image appears.
- Power Zoom (Auto Zoom) is available if a Power Zoom compatible FA lens is used with this camera. (p.337)

Using the Built-in Flash

Use the following procedures to take pictures in low light or backlit conditions and when you want to use the built-in flash.
The built-in flash is optimum for a subject at a distance from 0.7 m to 5 m. Exposure will not be properly controlled and vignetting (darkening of the corners of the image due to a lack of light) may occur when used at a distance closer than 0.7 m (this distance varies slightly depending on the lens being used and set sensitivity. (p.185))

Compatibility of built-in flash and lens

Vignetting may occur depending on the lens being used and the capture conditions. We recommend taking a test shot to check the compatibility.

☞ Lens Compatibility with the Built-in Flash (p.186)

Caution

- When using the built-in flash, remove the lens hood before shooting.
- The built-in flash fully discharges for lenses without a function to set the lens aperture ring to **A** (Auto).

memo

For details on the built-in flash and instructions on how to take pictures with an external flash, refer to “Using the Flash” (p.181).

Setting the Flash Mode

Flash Mode		Function
ϟ^{A}	Auto Flash Discharge	Discharges the flash automatically in dark or backlit conditions.
$\text{ϟ}^{\text{A}}_{\text{◉}}$	Auto Flash+ Red-eye Reduction	Discharges a pre-flash for red-eye reduction before the automatic flash.
ϟ	Flash On	Discharges the flash for each picture.
ϟ◉	Flash On+ Red-eye Reduction	Discharges a pre-flash for red-eye reduction before the main flash.

Flash Mode	Function
SLOW Slow-speed Sync	Sets to a slow shutter speed depending on the brightness. For example, when using this to shoot a portrait with the sunset in the background, both the person and the background are captured beautifully.
SLOW Slow-speed Sync+ Red-eye Reduction	Discharges a pre-flash for red-eye reduction before the main flash is discharged with Slow-speed Sync.
SLOW Trailing Curtain Sync	Discharges the flash immediately before closing the shutter curtain. Captures moving objects as if they are leaving a trail behind. (p.184)
W Wireless Mode	You can synchronize a dedicated external flash (AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ) without using a sync cord. (p.190)

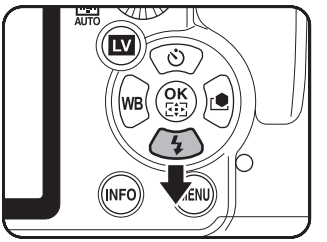
The flash modes that can be selected differ depending on the exposure mode.

Exposure Mode	Selectable Flash Mode	Restrictions
■	$\$^{A}$/$\$^{A}_{\odot}$	No flash compensation
P/Av/Sv	$\$$/$\$_{\odot}$/$^{SLOW}\$$/$^{SLOW}\$_{\odot}$/$^{SLOW}\$_{\blacktriangleright}$/$^{W}\$$	-
Tv/TAv/M/B	$\$$/$\$_{\odot}$/$\$_{\blacktriangleright}$/$^{W}\$$	-
X	$\$$/$\$_{\odot}$/$^{W}\$$	-
USER	According to the saved settings	

1 Press the four-way controller (▼) in Capture mode.

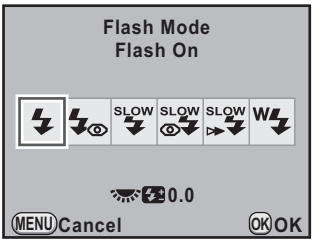
The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

The flash modes that can be selected for the set exposure mode appear.



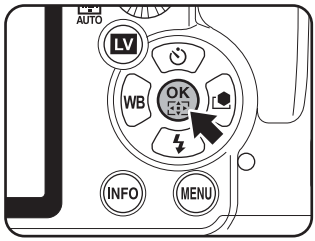
2 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select a flash mode.

When not in ■ (Green) mode, turn the rear e-dial (⟳) to perform the flash exposure compensation. (p.82)



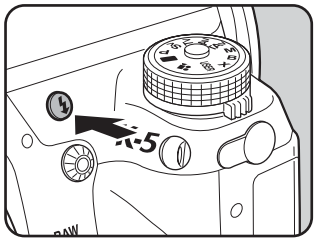
3 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

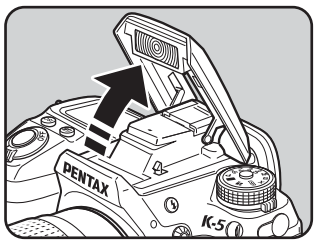


Using Built-in Flash

1 Press the ϟ button.



The built-in flash pops up and begins charging. When the flash is fully charged, ϟ appears in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel. (p.35, p.37)



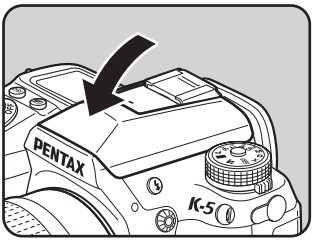
2 Press the shutter release button fully.

The picture is taken.

When the mode dial is at ■, the flash is not discharged if the lighting conditions do not require flash for correction even when the flash is popped up.

[Flash On] is used if the flash is popped up when the mode dial is at a position other than ■.

3 **Push down on the portion indicated in the illustration to retract the built-in flash.**



Using Red-eye Reduction Flash

"Red-eye" is the phenomenon where eyes look reddish in photographs taken in dark environments with a flash. This is caused by the reflection of the electronic flash in the retina of the eye. Red-eye occurs because pupils are dilated in dark environments. This phenomenon cannot be averted but the following measures can be used to combat it.

- Brighten the surroundings when shooting.
- Set to wide angle and move closer to the subject if a zoom lens is in use.
- Use a flash that supports red-eye reduction.
- Position the flash as far away from the camera as possible when using an external flash.

The red-eye reduction function on this camera reduces a red-eye effect by discharging the flash twice. With the red-eye reduction function, the pre-flash is discharged just before the shutter is released. This reduces pupil dilation. The main flash is then discharged while the pupils are smaller, reducing the red-eye effect.

To use the red-eye reduction function, select $\overset{A}{\underset{\odot}{\lightning}}$ in ■ mode, or $\underset{\odot}{\lightning}$ or $\overset{\text{SLOW}}{\underset{\odot}{\lightning}}$ in other modes.

Daylight-Sync Shooting

In daylight conditions, the flash will eliminate shadows when a portrait picture is taken with a shadow cast on a person's face. Use of the flash in this way is called Daylight-Sync shooting. [Flash On] is used when shooting with Daylight-Sync shooting.

- **Taking pictures (in P mode)**

1 Pop up the built-in flash manually and confirm that the flash mode is set to ⚡.
2 Confirm that the flash is fully charged.
3 Take a picture.

Without Daylight-Sync

With Daylight-Sync

memo The picture may be overexposed if the background is too bright.

Compensating for Flash Output

You can change the flash output in a range of -2.0 to +1.0. The flash compensation values are as follows for 1/3 EV and 1/2 EV.

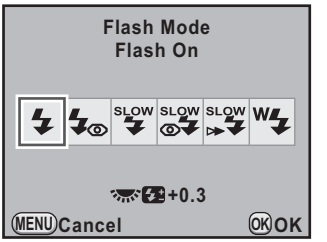
Step Interval	Flash Compensation Value
1/3 EV	-2.0, -1.7, -1.3, -1.0, -0.7, -0.3, 0.0, +0.3, +0.7, +1.0
1/2 EV	-2.0, -1.5, -1.0, -0.5, 0.0, +0.5, +1.0

Set interval of steps in [1. EV Steps] (p.120) of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu.

1 Turn the rear e-dial (⟳) in the [Flash Mode] screen.

The flash compensation value is displayed.

Press the ⦿ button to reset the flash output compensation value to 0.0.



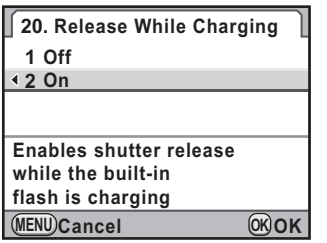
memo

- The flash output compensation cannot be set in ■ (Green) mode.
- ⚡± appears in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel during the flash exposure compensation. (p.35, p.37)
- When the flash output exceeds its maximum amount, the compensation will not be effective even if the compensation value is set to the plus (+) side.
- Compensating to the minus (-) side may not affect the image if the subject is too close, the aperture value is small or the sensitivity is high.
- The flash output compensation is also effective for external flash units which support P-TTL auto flash mode.

Enabling Shooting while Charging the Flash

You can set the camera to enable shooting while the flash is being charged.

Set [20. Release While Charging] to [On] in the [**C** Custom Setting 3] menu (p.92). By default, pictures cannot be taken while the built-in flash is charging.



Playing Back Images

You can play back captured images with the camera.

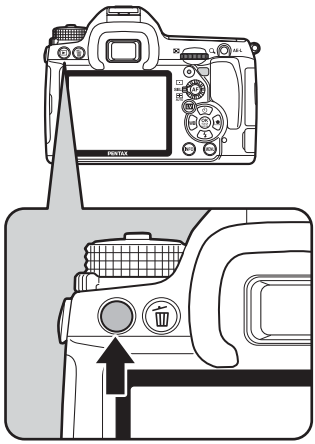
memo Use the provided “PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4” software to play back pictures using a computer. Refer to “Using the Provided Software” (p.320) for details on the software.

1 Press the ▶ button.

The camera enters Playback mode and the most recently captured image (image with the highest file number) is displayed on the monitor. (For movies, only the first frame is displayed on the monitor.)

Press the **INFO** button during playback to switch the information display such as shooting information for the displayed image.

Refer to p.29 for details about display information.

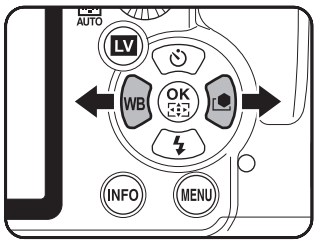


2 Press the four-way controller (◀▶).

◀ : Displays the previous image.

▶ : Displays the next image.

You can also display the next or previous image by turning the front e-dial ( ).



- Refer to “Playback Functions” (p.233) for details on the playback mode functions.
- When the file format of the last captured image is JPEG, and its data still remains in the buffer memory, you can additionally save the image in RAW format by pressing the **AE-L** button during playback.
  If the image was shot using any of the following settings, the corresponding RAW image listed is saved.
  - Multi-exposure — RAW image with Multi-exposure
  - Extended Bracketing — RAW image with standard settings
  - Digital Filter — RAW image without filter effect
  - HDR Capture — RAW image with standard exposure
  - Cross Processing — RAW image without Cross Processing

Deleting a Single Image

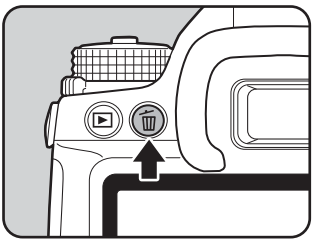
You can delete images one by one.

- Deleted images cannot be restored.
- Protected images cannot be deleted. (p.254)

1 Press the ▶ button and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select an image to delete.

2 Press the 🗑 button.

The delete confirmation screen appears.



3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Delete].

Select a file format to delete for images saved in RAW+ format.

Delete JPEG	Deletes only the JPEG image.
Delete RAW	Deletes only the RAW image.
Delete RAW+JPEG	Deletes images in both file formats.

4 Press the OK button.

The image is deleted.

memo When deleting multiple images at once, refer to “Deleting Multiple Images” (p.250).

Memo

4 Shooting Functions

This chapter describes the various basic and advanced shooting functions available with the K-5.

How to Operate the Shooting Functions 88

Setting the Exposure 93

Focusing 122

Checking the Composition, Exposure and Focus Before Shooting (Preview) 135

Using the Shake Reduction Function to Prevent Camera Shake 139

Taking Pictures Continuously 151

Shooting while Adjusting the Settings (Auto Bracketing) 157

Taking Pictures Using Digital Filters 162

Shooting with Live View 165

Recording Movies 171

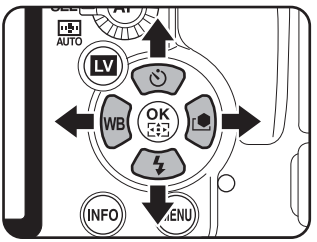
How to Operate the Shooting Functions

You can change capture-related settings using the direct keys, control panel, [📷 Rec. Mode] menu or [**C** Custom Setting] menu.

memo For details on how to use the menus, refer to “Using the Menus” (p.42).

Direct Keys Setting Items

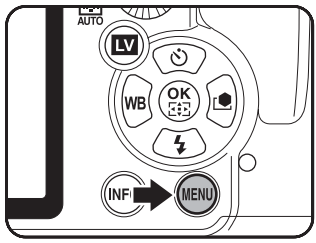
Press the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) in Capture mode to set the following items.



Key	Item	Function	Page
▲	Drive Mode	Sets Continuous Shooting, Self-timer, Remote Control, Exposure Bracketing or Mirror Lock-up Shooting.	p.151 p.143 p.145 p.157 p.149
▼	Flash Mode	Sets the method of flash discharge.	p.77
◀	White Balance	Adjusts the color balance to match the type of the light source illuminating the subject.	p.205
▶	Custom Image	Sets the image finishing tone such as color and contrast before shooting an image.	p.222

Rec. Mode Menu Setting Items

The following settings can be performed in the [📷 Rec. Mode 1-5] menus.
Press the **MENU** button in Capture mode to display the [📷 Rec. Mode 1] menu.



Menu	Item	Function	Page
📷1	USER Mode *1	Sets the settings for **USER** mode.	p.230
	Exposure Mode *1	Sets the exposure mode when the mode dial is set to **USER**.	p.230
	File Format *2	Sets the file format.	p.202
	JPEG Recorded Pixels *2	Sets the recording size of images saved in JPEG format.	p.200
	JPEG Quality *2	Sets the quality of images saved in JPEG format.	p.201
	AUTO AF Point Setting *2	Sets the number of AF points when the focusing area is set to AUTO (AUTO).	p.127
	Lens Correction *2	Corrects distortions and chromatic aberrations occurring due to lens properties.	p.218
📷2	Cross Processing *2	Changes the hues and contrast by performing digital cross processing.	p.225
	Extended Bracketing *2	Sets the Extended Bracketing shooting settings.	p.160
	Digital Filter *2	Applies a digital filter effect when taking pictures.	p.162
	HDR Capture *2	Enables capturing images at high dynamic range.	p.215
	Multi-exposure	Creates a composite picture by taking multiple frames.	p.155
	Interval Shooting	Takes pictures at a set interval from a set time.	p.152
	Composition Adjust.	Adjusts the composition of your image using the Shake Reduction mechanism.	p.220

Menu	Item	Function	Page
3	D-Range Setting *2	Expands the dynamic range and prevents bright and dark areas from occurring.	p.214
	ISO AUTO Setting *2	Sets the range of automatic correction in AUTO.	p.96
	High-ISO NR	Sets whether to use Noise Reduction when shooting with a high ISO sensitivity.	p.98
	Slow Shutter Speed NR	Sets whether to use Noise Reduction in slow speed shooting.	p.99
	Program Line	Selects Program Line.	p.102
	Color Space	Sets the color space to use.	p.212
	RAW File Format	Sets the file format of images saved in RAW format.	p.203
4	Movie	Sets the movie settings.	p.171
	Live View	Sets the Live View settings.	p.166
	Electronic Level	Sets whether to display the electronic level which detects whether the camera is level.	p.299
	Horizon Correction	Corrects the tilt (right and left) of the image.	p.140
	Shake Reduction *2	Reduces vertical and horizontal camera shake.	p.140
	Input Focal Length	Sets the focal length when using a lens whose focal length information cannot be obtained.	p.142
5	Instant Review	Sets the Instant Review display settings.	p.296
	Digital Preview	Sets the Digital Preview settings.	p.136
	E-Dial Programming	Sets the functions assigned to the e-dials in each exposure mode.	p.282
	Button Customization	Sets the functions for when the **RAW**/**Fx** button, **AF** button, or Preview dial is operated, or the shutter release button is pressed halfway.	p.285
	Memory	Determines which settings to save when the power is turned off.	p.312
	Save USER Mode	Saves the current camera settings as **USER**.	p.227

*1 Appears only when the mode dial is set to **USER**.

*2 Can also be set using the control panel.

Custom Setting Menu Setting Items

Set the [**C** Custom Setting 1-4] menus to fully use the functions of a SLR camera.

Menu	Item	Function	Page
C1	1. EV Steps	Sets the adjustment steps for exposure.	p.120
	2. Sensitivity Steps	Sets the adjustment steps for ISO sensitivity.	p.95
	3. Expanded Sensitivity	Expands the lower and upper sensitivity limits.	p.95
	4. Meter Operating Time	Sets the exposure metering time.	p.118
	5. AE-L with AF Locked	Sets whether to lock the exposure value when the focus is locked.	p.131
	6. Link AE to AF Point	Sets whether to link the exposure and AF point in the focusing area during multi-segment metering.	p.118
	7. Auto EV Compensation	Sets whether to compensate for automatically when the proper exposure cannot be determined.	-
C2	8. Auto Bracketing Order	Sets the order for Auto Bracketing shooting.	p.157
	9. One-Push Bracketing	Sets whether to shoot all frames with one release when using Exposure Bracketing.	p.159
	10. WB Adjustable Range	Sets whether to automatically fine-tune the white balance when specifying the light source on the white balance setting.	p.206
	11. WB When Using Flash	Sets the white balance setting when using flash.	p.206
	12. AWB in Tungsten Light	Sets whether to adjust the tungsten light color tone when the white balance is set to **AWB** (Auto White Balance).	-
	13. Color Temperature Steps	Sets the adjustment steps for color temperature.	p.210
	14. Superimpose AF Area	Sets whether to display the active AF point(s) in red in the viewfinder.	p.128

Menu	Item	Function	Page
C3	15. AF.S Setting	Sets the action priority for when the focus mode is set to **AF.S** and the shutter release button is fully pressed.	p.123
	16. AF.C Setting	Sets the action priority for Continuous Shooting when the focus mode is set to **AF.C**.	p.123
	17. AF Assist Light	Sets whether to use the AF assist light when autofocusing in dark locations.	p.124
	18. AF with Remote Control	Sets whether to use autofocus when shooting with remote control.	p.148
	19. Remote Control in Bulb	Sets the remote control operation when using the remote control in **B** (Bulb) mode.	p.116
	20. Release While Charging	Sets whether to release shutter while the built-in flash is charging.	p.82
	21. Flash in Wireless Mode	Sets the built-in flash discharge method in the wireless mode.	p.191
C4	22. LCD Panel Illumination	Sets the illumination for the LCD panel.	p.37
	23. Saving Rotation Info	Sets whether to save rotation information when shooting.	p.249
	24. Save Menu Location	Sets whether to save the last menu tab displayed on the monitor and to display it again the next time the **MENU** button is pressed.	p.294
	25. Catch-in Focus	When set to [On], if the focus mode is set to **AF.S** and a manual focus lens is attached, catch-in focus shooting is enabled and the shutter is released automatically when the subject comes into focus.	p.134
	26. AF Fine Adjustment	Adjusts the AF focusing position.	p.126
	27. Using Aperture Ring	Sets whether to enable shutter release when the lens aperture ring is set to the position other than **A**.	p.339
	Reset Custom Functions	Resets all the settings in the [**C** Custom Setting 1-4] menus to the defaults.	p.336

Effect of Aperture and Shutter Speed

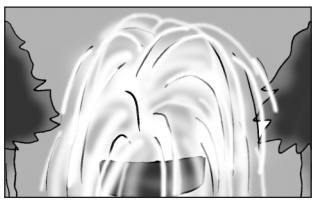
Correct exposure of the subject is determined by a combination of shutter speed and aperture setting. There are many correct combinations of shutter speed and aperture value for a particular subject. Different combinations produce different effects.

Effect of Shutter Speed

By changing the shutter speed, you can manipulate how time is expressed in the pictures you create. Unlike with your own naked eyes, in a picture you can capture a fraction of a moment or a whole period of time, creating different effects.
Use the **Tv** (Shutter Priority) mode.

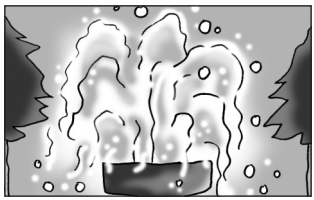
● **Using slower shutter speed**

If the subject is moving, the image will be blurred because the shutter is open longer.
It is possible to enhance the effect of motion (rivers, waterfalls, waves, etc.) by intentionally using a slower shutter speed.



● **Using faster shutter speed**

Choosing a faster shutter speed will allow freezing the action of a moving subject.
A faster shutter speed also helps to prevent camera shake.



Effect of Aperture

By changing the aperture, you can control the depth of the area that appears in focus in the picture (the depth of field). By either narrowing the focus to emphasize a single point or giving depth to your picture instead you can completely change the feel of the picture you create.
Use the **Av** (Aperture Priority) mode.

● **Opening the aperture (reduce the aperture value)**

Objects closer and farther than the focused subject will be more out of focus. For instance, if you take a picture of a flower against a landscape with the aperture open, the landscape in front and behind the flower will be blurred, emphasizing only the flower.

● **Closing the aperture (increase the aperture value)**

The range in focus expands forward and backward. For instance, if you take a picture of a flower against a landscape with the aperture narrowed, the landscape in front and behind the flower will be in focus.

Aperture and Depth of Field

The following table summarizes how the aperture affects the depth of field. The depth of field may also change depending on the lens used and the distance to the subject.

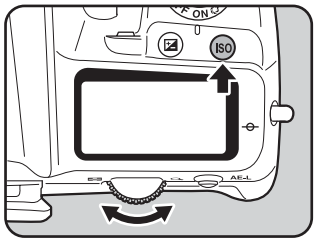
Aperture	Open (Smaller value)	⟷	Close (Larger value)
Depth of field	Shallow	⟷	Deep
Area of focus	Narrow	⟷	Wide
Lens focal length	Longer (Telephoto)	⟷	Shorter (Wide-angle)
Distance to the subject	Near	⟷	Far

- The depth of field for the K-5 differs depending on the lens but compared to a 35 mm camera, the value is roughly one aperture setting lower (the focused range becomes narrower).
- The wider the wide-angle lens, and the farther away the subject, the deeper the depth of field is (some zoom lenses do not have a scale for depth of field because of their designs).

Setting the Sensitivity

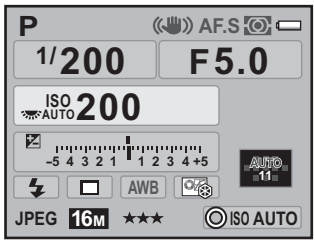
You can set the sensitivity to suit the brightness of the surroundings. The sensitivity can be set to [AUTO] or within a sensitivity range equivalent to ISO 100 to 12800. The default setting is [AUTO].

1 Turn the rear e-dial (◌) while pressing the ISO button in Capture mode.



The sensitivity displayed on the status screen and LCD panel and in the viewfinder changes.

Press the ⊙ button to set the sensitivity to [AUTO].



2 Take your finger off the ISO button and rear e-dial (◌).

The sensitivity is set.

- The sensitivity can also be changed by pressing the **ISO** button once, taking your finger off the button and turning the rear e-dial (). In this case, the sensitivity is fixed when the **ISO** button is pressed again or the exposure metering timer (p.118) elapses.
- When the exposure mode is set to ■ (Green), **TAv** (Shutter & Aperture Priority) or 🎥 (Movie), the sensitivity is fixed to [AUTO] and the setting cannot be changed.
- When the exposure mode is set to **Sv** (Sensitivity Priority), **M** (Hyper-manual), **B** (Bulb) or **X** (Flash X-sync Speed), the sensitivity cannot be set to [AUTO].
- When the exposure mode is set to **B** (Bulb), the upper sensitivity limit is ISO 1600.
- The sensitivity range can be expanded to a range of ISO 80 to 51200 when [3. Expanded Sensitivity] in the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu (p.91) is set to [On]. However, the minimum sensitivity is ISO 160 when [Highlight Correction] is set to [On] in [D-Range Setting] (p.214) of the [📷 Rec. Mode 3] menu.
- Captured images may show more noise if a higher sensitivity is set. You can reduce image noise by setting [High-ISO NR] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 3] menu. (p.98)
- You can select whether to set the sensitivity in increments of 1 EV or in accordance with the EV step setting for exposure (p.120). This can be set in [2. Sensitivity Steps] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu (p.91).

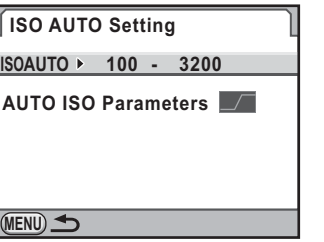
Setting the Range of Automatic Sensitivity Correction

Set the range in which the sensitivity is automatically adjusted when the sensitivity is set to [AUTO]. The sensitivity is automatically corrected in the range of [ISO 100-3200] by default.

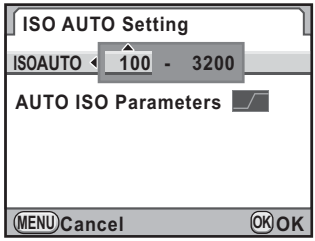
1 Select [ISO AUTO Setting] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 3] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [ISO AUTO Setting] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to set the minimum sensitivity.



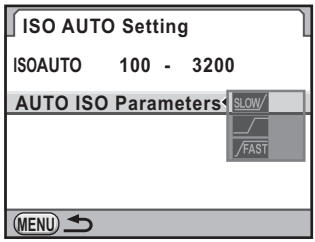
3 **Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to set the maximum sensitivity.**



4 **Press the OK button.**

5 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [AUTO ISO Parameters] and press the four-way controller (▶).**

6 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the parameter and press the OK button.**



SLOW Slow	Increases the sensitivity as little as possible
Standard	(default setting)
FAST Fast	Actively increases the sensitivity

7 **Press the MENU button twice.**

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Expanding the Dynamic Range

Dynamic range is the ratio that indicates the light level expressed by the CMOS sensor pixels from bright areas to dark areas. The larger it is, the better the whole range from dark to bright areas will appear in the picture. By expanding the dynamic range, you can expand the light level expressed by the CMOS sensor pixels, making it more difficult for bright areas to occur in the image.
To expand the dynamic range, make the settings in [D-Range Setting] of the [📷 Rec. Mode 3] menu. (p.214)

Reducing Image Noise (Noise Reduction)

When shooting with a digital camera, image noise (image roughness or unevenness) becomes noticeable in the following situations.

- when shooting with a long exposure
- when shooting with a high sensitivity setting
- when the temperature of the CMOS sensor is high

You can reduce image noise by using Noise Reduction. However, images shot with Noise Reduction will take longer to save.

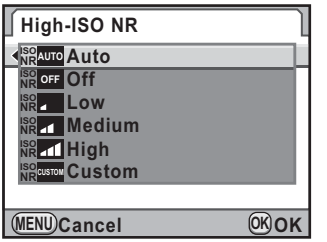
High-ISO NR

Reduces noise at high sensitivity (ISO) settings.

1 Select [High-ISO NR] in the [Rec. Mode 3] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [High-ISO NR] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Auto], [Off], [Low], [Medium], [High] or [Custom].



Auto	Applies Noise Reduction at optimally calculated levels throughout ISO range. (default setting)
Off	Does not apply Noise Reduction at any ISO setting.
Low/Medium/High	Applies Noise Reduction at constant chosen level throughout ISO range.
Custom	Applies Noise Reduction at user-defined levels for each ISO setting.

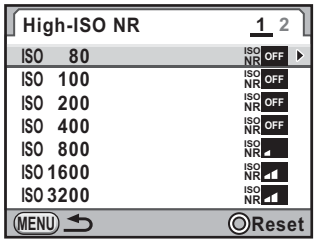
3 Press the OK button.

If you select [Auto], [Off], [Low], [Medium], or [High], proceed to Step 7.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Setting] and press the four-way controller (▶).

The screen to set the noise reduction level according to the sensitivity appears.

5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a sensitivity value and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to set the level of noise reduction which is applied to the selected sensitivity.



Turn the rear e-dial (🔄) to display the [High-ISO NR 2] screen.

Press the ⊛ button to reset the setting of the selected sensitivity value.

The sensitivity values displayed vary according to the [1. EV Steps] and [2. Sensitivity Steps] settings made in the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu (p.91).

6 Press the MENU button.

The screen that was displayed in Step 2 appears again.

7 Press the MENU button twice.

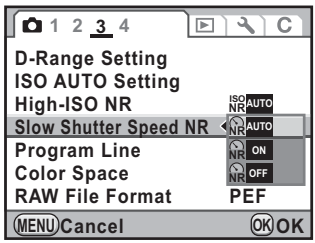
The camera is ready to take a picture.

Slow Shutter Speed NR

Reduces noise during long exposures.

1 Select [Slow Shutter Speed NR] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 3] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Auto], [On] or [Off], and press the OK button.



Auto	Determines conditions such as shutter speed, sensitivity, and internal temperature, and automatically applies Noise Reduction as necessary. (default setting)
On	Applies Noise Reduction when the exposure time is longer than 1 second.
Off	Does not apply Noise Reduction.

3 Press the MENU button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

- Processing may take a while when shooting with Slow Shutter Speed NR set to [On]. Pictures cannot be taken while an image is being processed.
- When the Noise Reduction function is activated, [**nr**] blinks on the LCD panel and in the viewfinder where the aperture value is normally displayed, and a countdown of processing time is displayed where the shutter speed is normally displayed.

Changing the Exposure Mode

This camera features the following nine exposure modes. Use the mode dial to change the exposure mode. (p.45)
The settings available for each exposure mode are as follows.

(✓: Available ×: Not available)

Exposure Mode	Characteristics	EV Compensation	Change Shutter Speed	Change Aperture Value	Change Sensitivity	Page
■ Green	Lets you capture images with fully automatic settings.	×	×	×	×	p.103
P Hyper-program	Automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain a proper exposure according to Program Line when taking pictures. You can use the front and rear e-dials to switch between shutter priority and aperture priority.	✓	✓	✓	✓	p.104

Exposure Mode	Characteristics	EV Compensation	Change Shutter Speed	Change Aperture Value	Change Sensitivity	Page
Sv Sensitivity Priority	Automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain a proper exposure according to the set sensitivity.	✓	×	×	Other than AUTO	p.105
Tv Shutter Priority	Lets you set the desired shutter speed for expressing moving subjects.	✓	✓	×	✓	p.107
Av Aperture Priority	Lets you set the desired aperture value for controlling the depth of field.	✓	×	✓	✓	p.109
TAv Shutter & Aperture Priority	Automatically sets the sensitivity to obtain a proper exposure with the set shutter speed and aperture value according to the brightness of the subject.	✓	✓	✓	× AUTO only	p.110
M Hyper-manual	Lets you set the shutter speed and aperture value to capture the picture with creative intent.	–	✓	✓	✓	p.112
B Bulb	Lets you capture images that require slow shutter speeds such as fireworks and night scenes.	×	×	✓	Other than AUTO (up to ISO 1600)	p.115
X Flash X-sync Speed	The shutter speed is locked at 1/180 second. Use this when using an external flash that does not automatically set the sync speed.	–	×	✓	Other than AUTO	p.116

memo For each exposure mode, you can set the functions for when the front/rear e-dial or the ⊛ button is operated. Set in [E-Dial Programming] of the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu. (p.282) You can confirm the functions of the front and rear e-dials and the ⊛ button by viewing the guides which appear on the monitor when the camera is switched on or the mode dial is turned. (p.24)

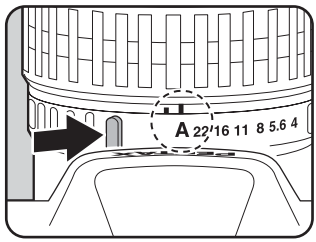
Program Line

In [Program Line] of the [📷 Rec. Mode 3] menu, you can choose from the following Program Lines. When [**P** LINE] is selected for the ⊙ button setting in **P**/**Sv** mode or **TAv**/**M** mode (p.282), exposure is regulated according to the set Program Line.

Setting	Characteristics
AUTO Auto	Camera determines the appropriate settings.
Normal Normal	Basic Program Automatic Exposure (default setting)
Hi-speed Priority	Program Automatic Exposure that prioritizes high shutter speeds.
DOF Priority (deep)	Program Automatic Exposure that closes the aperture as much as possible for a deep depth of field.
DOF Priority (shallow)	Program Automatic Exposure that opens the aperture as much as possible for a shallow depth of field.
MTF MTF Priority	Program Automatic Exposure that prioritizes the best aperture settings for the attached lens when a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J or FA lens is used.

Using a Lens with an Aperture Ring

When using a lens with an aperture ring, set the aperture to the **A** (AUTO) position while holding down the auto-lock button on the lens.



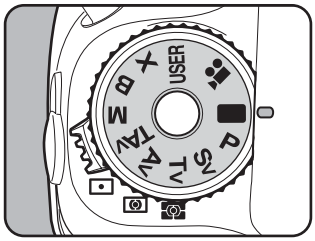
Using the ■ (Green) Mode

Lets you capture images with fully automatic settings.
In ■ mode, pictures are taken with the following settings.

- Program Line — AUTO (AUTO)
- File Format — JPEG
- Sensitivity — AUTO
- Metering Method — (Multi-segment Metering)
- AF Point — AUTO (Auto)
- AUTO AF Point Setting — 11 AF Points
- White Balance — **AWB** (Auto)
- Custom Image — Bright
- High-ISO NR — Auto
- Slow Shutter Speed NR — Auto
- Shake Reduction — (On)
- Color Space — sRGB

memo If the **MENU** button is pressed in ■ mode, the menu for Green Mode appears. You cannot select items that cannot be changed.

1 Set the mode dial to ■.



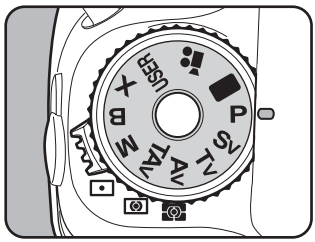
Caution

- In ■ mode, the following functions are not available.
  - Changing the shutter speed
  - Changing the aperture value
  - EV Compensation
  - Flash (Flash On, Slow-speed Sync, Exposure Compensation)
  - Continuous Shooting
  - Focus Mode **AF.C** (**AF.S** is selected)
  - D-Range Setting
  - Lens Correction
  - Exposure Bracketing
  - Mirror Lock-up shooting
  - Multi-exposure
  - Interval Shooting
  - Extended Bracketing
  - Digital Filter
  - HDR Capture
  - Cross Processing
  - Horizon Correction
  - Saving as **USER** mode
  - **AE-L** and **RAW**/**Fx** button operations
  - Button Customization (default settings are used)
  - Custom menu settings (default settings are used)
- The control panel cannot be displayed in ■ mode.

Using the P (Hyper-program) Mode

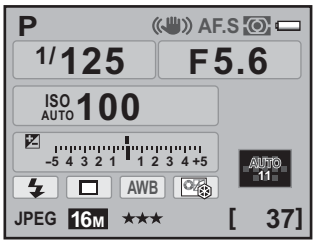
Automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to obtain a proper exposure according to Program Line when taking pictures.
You can also use the front and rear e-dials to change the shutter speed and aperture value while maintaining the proper exposure. (p.282)

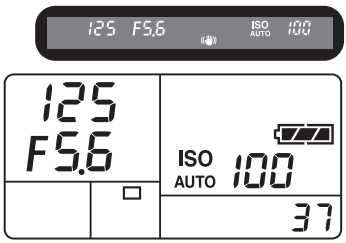
1 Set the mode dial to P.



2 Confirm the shutter speed and aperture value.

Confirm the settings using the status screen, viewfinder or LCD panel.



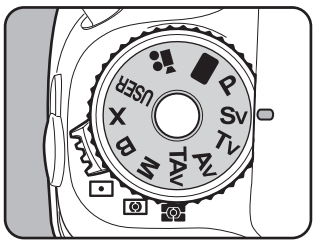


- Set the Program Line to use in [Program Line] of the [Rec. Mode 3] menu. (p.102)
- Turn the rear e-dial (⟳) while pressing the ± button to change the EV compensation value. (p.119)
- The proper exposure may not be obtained with the selected shutter speed and aperture value when the sensitivity is not set to [AUTO] (p.95).

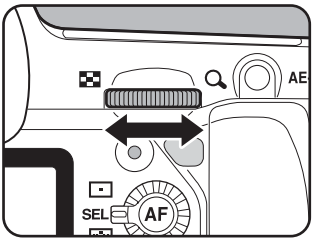
Using the Sv (Sensitivity Priority) Mode

You can set the sensitivity to suit the brightness of the subject.
The shutter speed and aperture value are automatically set according to the selected sensitivity to obtain a proper exposure.

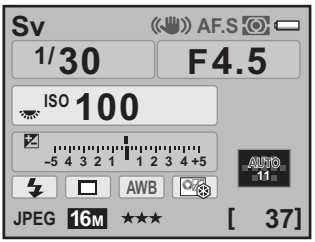
1 Set the mode dial to Sv.

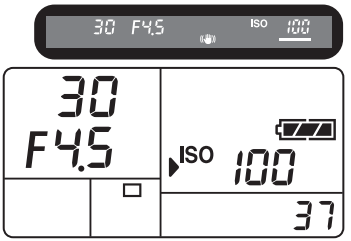


2 Turn the rear e-dial (🔄) to adjust the sensitivity.



The set values are displayed in the status screen and viewfinder and on the LCD panel.





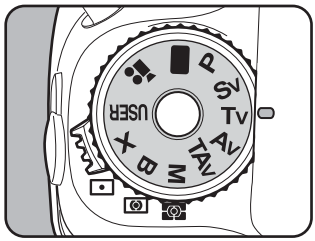
- You can set the sensitivity to a value equivalent to ISO 100 to 12800. [AUTO] is not available.
- Turn the rear e-dial (🔄) while pressing the ± button to change the EV compensation value. (p.119)
- The sensitivity can be set in increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV. Set the exposure steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.120)

Using the Tv (Shutter Priority) Mode

Lets you set the desired shutter speed for expressing moving subjects. When taking pictures of a fast moving subject, you can increase the shutter speed to make the subject look still or decrease the shutter speed to have the subject show movement.
The aperture value is automatically set to give a proper exposure depending on the shutter speed.

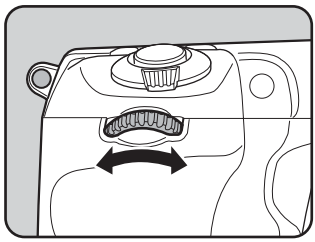
☞ Effect of Aperture and Shutter Speed (p.93)

1 Set the mode dial to Tv.

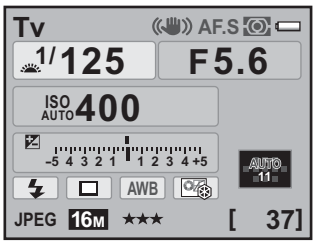


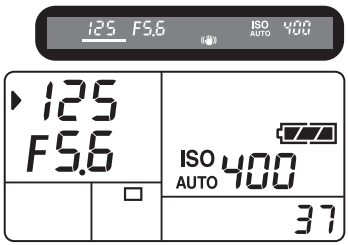
2 Turn the front e-dial ( ) to adjust the shutter speed.

The shutter speed can be set within the range of 1/8000 to 30 seconds.



The set values are displayed in the status screen and viewfinder and on the LCD panel.





- Turn the rear e-dial (⟳) while pressing the ± button to change the EV compensation value. (p.119)
- The shutter speed can be set in increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV. Set the exposure steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.120)
- The proper exposure may not be obtained with the selected shutter speed when the sensitivity is not set to [AUTO] (p.95).

Exposure Warning

If the subject is too bright or too dark, the aperture value will blink on the status screen and LCD panel and in the viewfinder. If the subject is too bright, choose a faster shutter speed. If it is too dark, choose a slower shutter speed. When the aperture value indication stops blinking, you can take a picture with proper exposure.

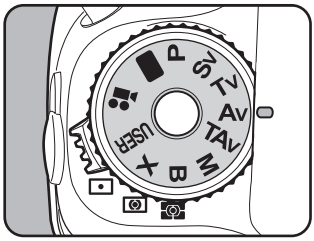
Use a commercially available ND (Neutral Density) Filter if the subject is too bright. Use a flash if it is too dark.

Using the Av (Aperture Priority) Mode

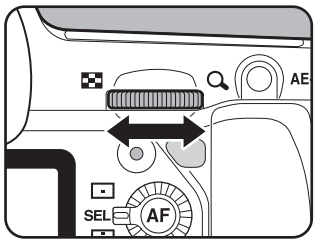
Set the aperture value for controlling the depth of field. The depth of field is deeper and the front and back of the focused object is clear when the aperture is set to a large value, small lens opening. The depth of field is shallower and the front and back of the focused object is blurred when the aperture is set to a small value, large lens opening.
The shutter speed is automatically set to the proper exposure depending on the aperture value.

☞ Effect of Aperture and Shutter Speed (p.93)

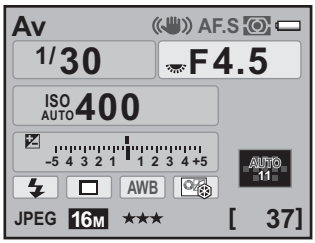
1 Set the mode dial to Av.

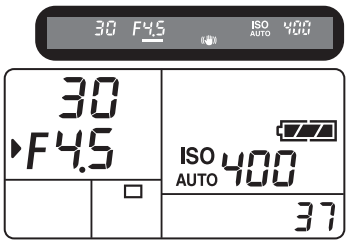


2 Turn the rear e-dial (⟳) to adjust the aperture value.



The set values are displayed in the status screen and viewfinder and on the LCD panel.





- Turn the rear e-dial (⟳) while pressing the ± button to change the EV compensation value. (p.119)
- The aperture value can be set in increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV. Set the exposure steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.120)
- The proper exposure may not be obtained with the selected aperture value when the sensitivity is not set to [AUTO] (p.95).

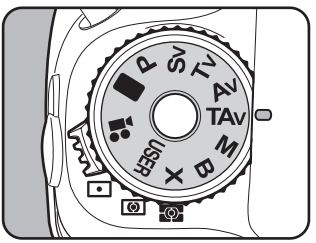
Exposure Warning

If the subject is too bright or too dark, the shutter speed will blink on the status screen and LCD panel and in the viewfinder. When the subject is too bright, set the aperture to a smaller lens opening (larger number), and when too dark, set the aperture to a larger lens opening (smaller number). Once blinking stops, you can take a picture with proper exposure.
Use a commercially available ND (Neutral Density) Filter if the subject is too bright. Use a flash if it is too dark.

Using the TAv (Shutter & Aperture Priority) Mode

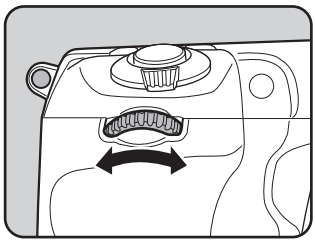
You can set both the desired shutter speed and aperture to take the picture.
Automatically sets the sensitivity so that the manually set shutter speed and aperture value will give the proper exposure according to the brightness of the subject.

1 Set the mode dial to TAv.

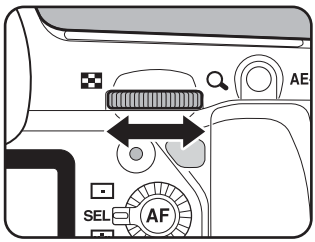


2 Turn the front e-dial ( ) to adjust the shutter speed.

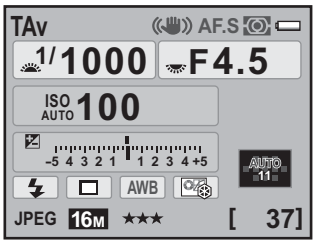
The shutter speed can be set within the range of 1/8000 to 30 seconds.

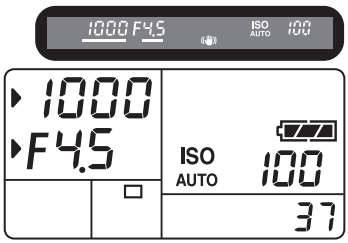


3 Turn the rear e-dial ( ) to adjust the aperture value.



The set values are displayed in the status screen and viewfinder and on the LCD panel.





- Turn the rear e-dial ( ) while pressing the button to change the EV compensation value. (p.119)
- The shutter speed and aperture value can be set in increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV. Set the exposure steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.120)
- In **TAv** mode, the sensitivity is fixed to [AUTO].

Exposure Warning

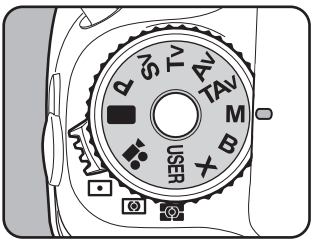
If the subject is too bright or too dark, the sensitivity will blink on the status screen and LCD panel and in the viewfinder. In such situations, change the shutter speed and aperture. When the indication stops blinking, you can take a picture with proper exposure.
Use a commercially available ND (Neutral Density) Filter if the subject is too bright. Use a flash if it is too dark.

Using the M (Hyper-manual) Mode

You can set the shutter speed and aperture value. This mode is suitable to take pictures of your choice by combining them. This mode is convenient for taking pictures using the same combination of the shutter speed and aperture settings or taking intentionally underexposed (darker) or overexposed (brighter) photographs.

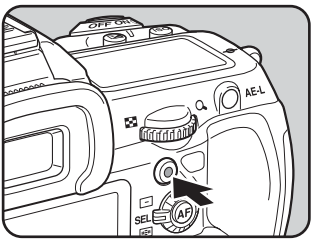
☞ Effect of Aperture and Shutter Speed (p.93)

1 Set the mode dial to M.



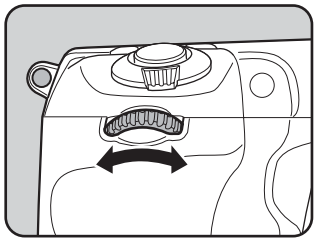
2 Press the ⊙ button.

The shutter speed and aperture value are automatically switched to obtain a proper exposure.

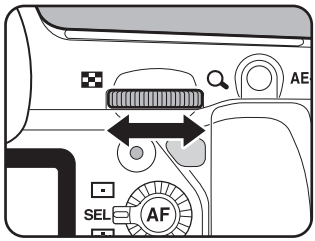


3 Turn the front e-dial ( ) to adjust the shutter speed.

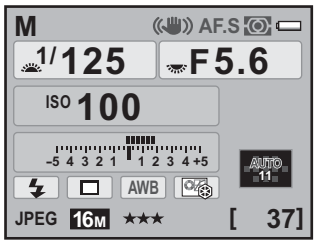
The shutter speed can be set within the range of 1/8000 to 30 seconds.



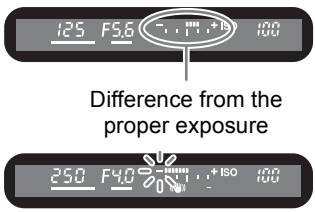
4 Turn the rear e-dial ( ) to adjust the aperture value.



The set values are displayed in the status screen and viewfinder and on the LCD panel.



While adjusting the shutter speed or aperture value, the difference from the proper exposure (EV value) is displayed in a bar graph. The proper exposure is set when ▮ is in the middle of the EV bar. If it is towards -, it is underexposed. If it is towards +, it is overexposed. If the value exceeds the range of the EV bar (±5.0), or if the subject is too bright or too dark, the "+" or "-" blinks.



- The sensitivity cannot be set to [AUTO] in **M** mode. When the sensitivity is set to [AUTO] and the exposure mode is changed to **M** mode, the sensitivity is also changed to the lowest value set in “Setting the Range of Automatic Sensitivity Correction” (p.96).
- The shutter speed and aperture value can be set in increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV. Set the exposure steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.120)
- Since the bar graphs in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel display the amount of camera tilt to the left or right, the difference from the proper exposure is displayed as a number when [Electronic Level] is set to ☑ (On).

Combining with AE-L

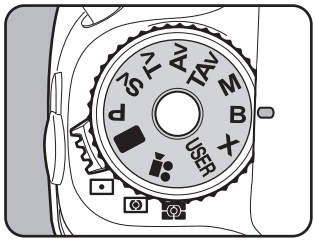
When the exposure is locked (p.121) by pressing the **AE-L** button in **M** mode, if the shutter speed or aperture value is changed, the combination of shutter speed and aperture value changes while the exposure value is retained.

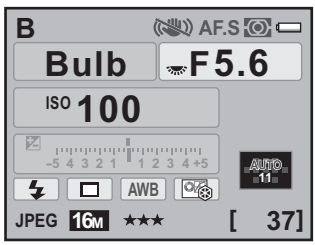
Example: If the shutter speed is 1/125 sec. and aperture is F5.6 and these settings are locked with the **AE-L** button, the aperture automatically changes to F11 if the shutter speed is changed to 1/30 sec. with the front e-dial ( ).

Using the B (Bulb) Mode

This setting is useful when shooting night scenes and fireworks which require long exposures.

1 Set the mode dial to B.





2 Press the shutter release button.

The shutter remains open as long as the shutter release button is kept pressed.

Caution

The following functions are not available in **B** mode.

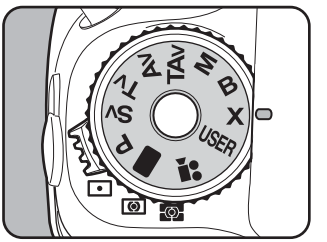
- EV Compensation
- Exposure Bracketing
- Continuous Shooting
- Interval Shooting
- HDR Capture

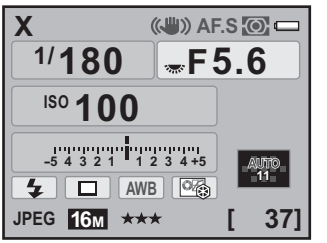
- The aperture value can be set in increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV. Set the exposure steps in [1. EV Steps] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.120)
- The Shake Reduction function is automatically turned off when the exposure mode is set to **B** mode.
- Use a sturdy tripod and the cable switch CS-205 (optional) or Remote Control (optional) to prevent camera shake when using **B** mode. Connect the cable switch to the cable release terminal (p.19).
- When using the remote control, set whether to start exposure with a press and stop it with another press of the shutter release button on the remote control, or to keep the shutter open as long as the release button on the remote control is kept pressed. Set in [19. Remote Control in Bulb] of the [**C** Custom Setting 3] menu (p.92).
- The sensitivity cannot be set to [AUTO] in **B** mode. When the sensitivity is set to [AUTO] and the exposure mode is changed to **B** mode, the sensitivity is also changed to the lowest value set in “Setting the Range of Automatic Sensitivity Correction” (p.96).
- When the exposure mode is set to **B**, the upper sensitivity limit is ISO 1600.
- There is no limit on exposure time for Bulb shooting. However, we recommend the use of the AC adapter kit K-AC50 (optional) when shooting with a long exposure setting as the battery is being drained while the shutter remains open. (p.53)

Using the X (Flash X-Sync Speed) Mode

The shutter speed is locked at 1/180 second. Use this when using an external flash that does not automatically set the sync speed.

1 Set the mode dial to X.





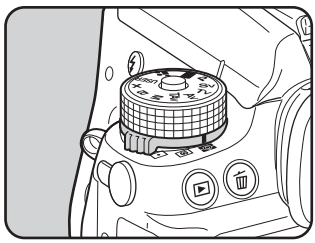
- Turn the rear e-dial (⟳) to adjust the aperture value.
- Press the ⊛ button to retain the shutter speed at 1/180 second and automatically adjust the aperture value.
- The sensitivity cannot be set to [AUTO] in **X** mode. When the sensitivity is set to [AUTO] and the exposure mode is changed to **X** mode, the sensitivity is also changed to the lowest value set in “Setting the Range of Automatic Sensitivity Correction” (p.96).

Selecting the Metering Method

Choose the part of the viewfinder to use for measuring brightness and determining exposure. The following three methods are available. The factory default setting is ◙ (Multi-segment metering).

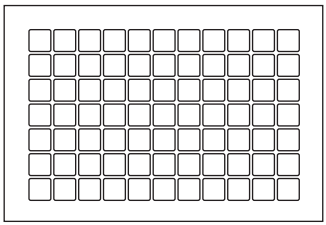
1 Turn the metering mode switching lever.

The set metering method is displayed in the status screen and viewfinder.



● ◙ **Multi-segmented Metering**

The scene in the viewfinder is metered in 77 different zones. Even in backlit locations, this mode automatically determines what level of brightness is in which portion and automatically adjusts exposure.



Center-weighted metering mode is automatically set even if you select multi-segment metering mode when using a lens other than a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA, F or A lens, or when the lens aperture ring is set to a position other than **A** (Auto). (Can only be used if [27. Using Aperture Ring] (p.339) in the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu is set to [Permitted].)

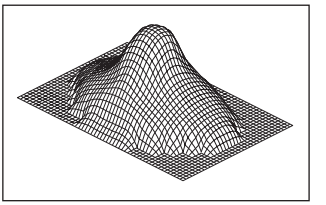
Linking AE to AF Point during Multi-segment Metering

In [6. Link AE to AF Point] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu (p.91), you can link the exposure and AF point in the focusing area during multi-segment metering.

1	Off	Exposure is set separately from the AF point. (default setting)
2	On	Exposure is set in accordance with the AF point.

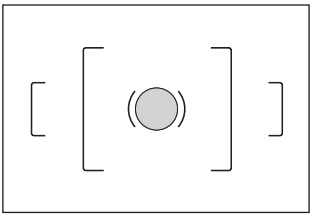
● **Center-weighted Metering**

Metering is weighted at the center of the viewfinder. Use this metering when you want to compensate for the exposure by experience, instead of leaving it to the camera. The illustration shows that sensitivity increases as the pattern height increases (center). This mode does not automatically compensate for backlit scenes.



● **Spot Metering**

The brightness is measured only within a limited area at the center of the viewfinder. You can use this in combination with the AE Lock (p.121) when the subject is extremely small and the correct exposure is difficult to obtain.



Setting the Meter Operating Time

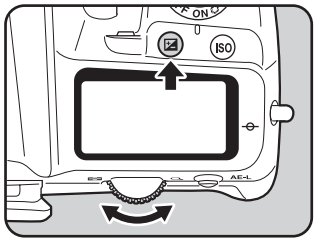
You can set the exposure metering time to [10 sec.] (default setting), [3 sec.] or [30 sec.] in [4. Meter Operating Time] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu (p.91).

Adjusting Exposure

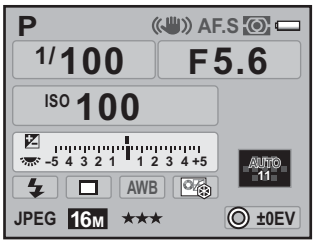
This allows you to deliberately overexpose (brighten) or underexpose (darken) your picture.
The exposure steps can be selected from 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV in [1. EV Steps] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu. You can adjust the EV compensation value from -5 to +5 (EV).

1 Turn the rear e-dial (◎) while pressing the ± button.

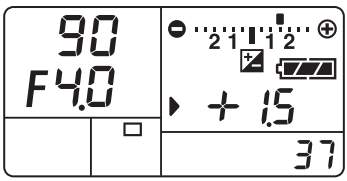
The exposure is adjusted.



± is displayed in the status screen and viewfinder and on the LCD panel during adjustment.



Compensation value



Press the ± button to check the compensation value after adjustment.
Press the ⊙ button to reset the EV compensation value to 0.0.

Caution EV compensation is not available when the exposure mode is set to ■ (Green) or **B** (Bulb) mode.

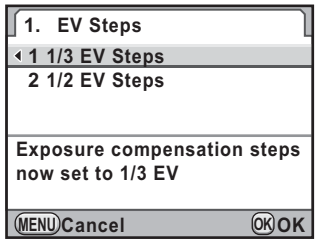
memo
- The compensation value can also be changed by pressing the ± button once, taking your finger off the button and turning the rear e-dial (◎). In this case, EV compensation is set when the ± button is pressed again or the exposure metering timer (p.118) elapses.
- The compensation value is not canceled by turning the camera off or by switching to another exposure mode.

EV Compensation for M and X modes

For example, if the EV compensation value is set to +1.5 for **M** (Hyper-manual) and **X** (Flash X-sync speed) modes, an underexposure of 1.5 EV is displayed on the EV bar. If you set the exposure value so that the ▮ is displayed at the center of the EV bar, the image will be captured with the compensated value.

Changing the Exposure Steps

Set the exposure compensation steps to increments of 1/3 EV or 1/2 EV in [1. EV Steps] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu (p.91).



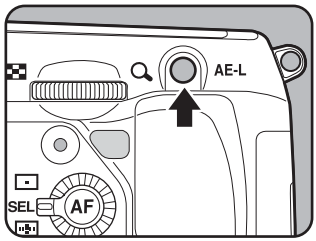
Step Interval	Exposure Setting Value
1/3 EV	±0.3, ±0.7, ±1.0, ±1.3, ±1.7, ±2.0, ±2.3, ±2.7, ±3.0, ±3.3, ±3.7, ±4.0, ±4.3, ±4.7, ±5.0
1/2 EV	±0.5, ±1.0, ±1.5, ±2.0, ±2.5, ±3.0, ±3.5, ±4.0, ±4.5, ±5.0

Locking the Exposure Before Shooting (AE Lock)

AE Lock is a function that locks the exposure prior to taking a picture. Use this when the subject is too small or is backlit and a proper exposure setting cannot be obtained.

1 Set the exposure and press the AE-L button.

The camera locks the exposure (brightness) at that instant.
✱ is displayed in the status screen and viewfinder while the AE Lock is engaged.



memo

- The exposure remains locked as long as the **AE-L** button is kept pressed or the shutter release button is kept pressed halfway. The exposure remains locked for twice the amount of the exposure metering timer (p.118) even after taking your finger off the **AE-L** button.
- You will hear a beep when the **AE-L** button is pressed. The beep can be turned off. (p.288)
- AE Lock is not available in ■ (Green), **B** (Bulb) or **X** (Flash X-sync Speed) mode.
- When any of the following operations are performed, AE Lock is canceled.
  - the **AE-L** button is pressed again
  - the ▶ button, **MENU** button or **INFO** button is pressed
  - the mode dial is turned
  - the lens is changed
  - a lens with an **A** (Auto) position is set to a position other than the **A** position
- The combination of shutter speed and aperture value changes depending on the zooming position even while the AE Lock is engaged when using a zoom lens whose maximum aperture value varies depending on the focal length. However, the exposure value does not change and a picture is taken at a brightness level set when the AE Lock is activated.
- The exposure can also be locked when the focus is locked. Set in [5. AE-L with AF Locked] of the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu. (p.131)

Changing the Exposure Automatically when Shooting

Auto Bracketing is a function for continuously shooting images with the exposure automatically adjusted for underexposure and overexposure. Each time the shutter release button is pressed, 2, 3 or 5 shots are taken. Refer to “Shooting while Adjusting the Settings (Auto Bracketing)” (p.157).

Focusing

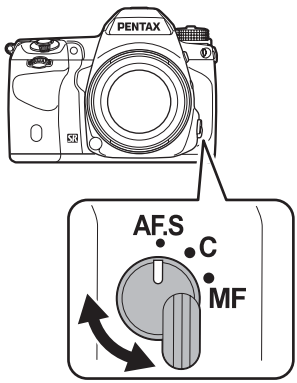
You can focus with the following methods.

AF Autofocus	The camera automatically focuses on the subject when the shutter release button is pressed halfway.
MF Manual focus	Manually adjust the focus.

Using the Autofocus

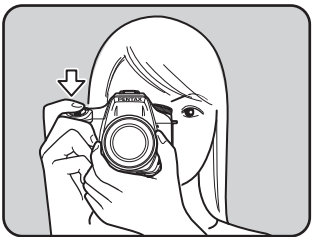
You can also choose the autofocus mode from **AF.S** (Single mode) where the shutter release button is pressed halfway to focus on the subject and the focus is locked at that position, and **AF.C** (Continuous mode) where the subject is kept in focus by continuous adjustment while the shutter release button is pressed halfway. The factory default setting is **AF.S**.

1 Turn the focus mode lever to AF.S or C.



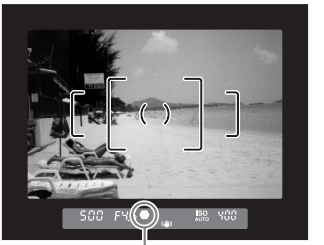
<table>
<tr>
<td>AF.S
Single mode</td>
<td>When the shutter release button is pressed halfway and the subject comes into focus, the focus is locked (focus lock) at that position. To focus on another subject, take your finger off the shutter release button first, then press the shutter release button halfway again.
• The AF assist light turns on as necessary. (p.124)
• Set the action priority for when the shutter release button is pressed fully in [15. AF.S Setting] of the [C Custom Setting 3] menu (p.92).
<table>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Focus-priority</td><td>The shutter cannot be released until the subject is in focus. (default setting)
If the subject is too close to the camera, move back and take the picture. If the subject is difficult to focus (p.75), adjust the focus manually. (p.132)</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Release-priority</td><td>The shutter can be released even if the subject is not in focus.</td></tr>
</table>
</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF.C
Continuous mode</td>
<td>The subject is kept in focus by continuous adjustment while the shutter release button is pressed halfway. The focus indicator ● appears and you will hear a beep when the subject comes into focus. Even if the subject is not in focus, the shutter can be released when the shutter release button is pressed fully.
• When the shutter release button is pressed halfway to focus, the camera automatically tracks the subject if it is determined to be a moving object. The lens will automatically operate and continuously focus on the subject.
• Set the action priority for Continuous Shooting in [16. AF.C Setting] of the [C Custom Setting 3] menu (p.92).
<table>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Focus-priority</td><td>Takes pictures giving priority to keeping the subject in focus during Continuous Shooting. (default setting)</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>FPS-priority</td><td>Takes pictures giving priority to the shooting speed during Continuous Shooting.</td></tr>
</table>
</td>
</tr>
</table>

2 Look through the viewfinder and press the shutter release button halfway.



The focus indicator ⬣ appears and you will hear a beep when the subject comes into focus. (When blinking, the subject is not in focus.)

☞Subjects that are difficult to focus on (p.75)



Focus indicator

AF Assist Light

You can set whether or not to use the AF assist light during **AF.S** mode in [17. AF Assist Light] of the [**C** Custom Setting 3] menu (p.92).

1	On	To make focusing easier when the subject is in a dark location, the AF assist light turns on when the shutter release button is pressed halfway. (default setting)
2	Off	The AF assist light will not be used.

Using the AF Button to Focus on the Subject

You can set the camera so that focusing is performed when the **AF** button is pressed.

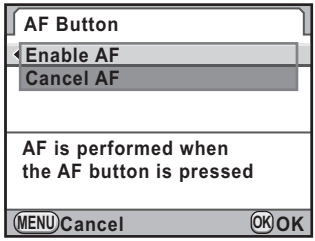
1 Select [Button Customization] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Button Customization] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [AF Button] and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [AF Button] screen appears.

3 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Enable AF].



Enable AF	Autofocus is performed by using the **AF** button or the shutter release button. (default setting)
Cancel AF	**MF** appears in the viewfinder while the **AF** button is pressed. Autofocus is not performed when the shutter release button is pressed. (Take your finger off the **AF** button to return to normal autofocus mode.)

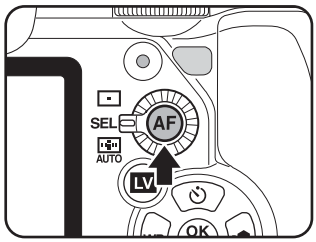
4 Press the OK button.

5 Press the MENU button three times.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

6 Press the AF button while looking through the viewfinder.

Autofocus is performed.



AF.S Single mode	When the **AF** button is pressed and the subject comes into focus, the Focus Lock function is activated while the button is pressed.
AF.C Continuous mode	The subject is kept in focus while the **AF** button is pressed.

7 Press the shutter release button.

When [Enable AF] is assigned to [Shutter Button Half Press] in [Button Customization], press the shutter release button while holding down the **AF** button.

The picture is taken.

AF Fine Adjustment

You can adjust the AF focusing position.

Caution

- **Be sure to use [AF Fine Adjustment] only when necessary. Care should be taken as adjusting the autofocus may make it difficult to capture images with the appropriate focus.**
- Any camera shake during test shooting may make it difficult to obtain the accurate focusing position. Therefore, always use a tripod when taking test shots.

1 Select [26. AF Fine Adjustment] in the [C Custom Setting 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

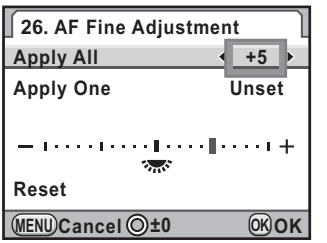
2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [On] and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [26. AF Fine Adjustment] screen appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Apply All] or [Apply One].

Apply All	Applies the same adjustment value to all lenses.
Apply One	This item will appear on the display only when the lens ID is obtained. Saves and applies a different adjustment value for each lens type. (Up to 20 lens types)
Reset	Resets the saved adjustment value.

4 Press the four-way controller (▶) and adjust the value with the rear e-dial (🔄) or the four-way controller (◀▶).



Available operations

Four-way controller (▶)/ Rear e-dial (🔄) to the right (🔍)	Adjusts the focus to a closer position.
Four-way controller (◀)/ Rear e-dial (🔄) to the left (🏔)	Adjusts the focus to a farther position.
⊙ button	Resets the adjustment value to ±0.

5 Press the OK button.

The adjustment value is saved.

6 Press the MENU button three times.

The camera returns to Capture mode.

7 Take a test picture.

You can easily check the focusing point by enlarging the image during Digital Preview (p.138) or Live View (p.165).

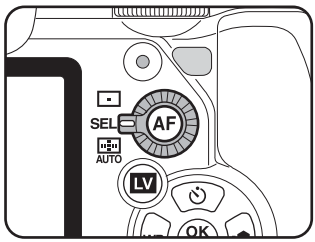
memo Even when an adjustment value has been saved using [Apply One], if you press the **OK** button with [Apply All] selected in Step 3, the [Apply All] value is used instead of the [Apply One] value.

Selecting the Focusing Area (AF Point)

Choose the part of the viewfinder to set focus to. The factory default setting is AUTO (Auto).
Selected AF point(s) light red in the viewfinder (Superimpose AF Area).

Center	Sets the focusing area to the center of the viewfinder.
SEL Select	Sets the focusing area to the user selected point from eleven points in the AF frame.
AUTO Auto	The camera selects the optimum AF point even if the subject is not centered. You can select from 11 AF points (default setting) or 5 points in [AUTO AF Point Setting] in the [Rec. Mode 1] menu.

1 Turn the AF point switching dial.

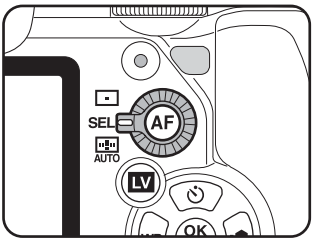


- AF point(s) are not illuminated red in the viewfinder when [Off] is selected for [14. Superimpose AF Area] in the [**C** Custom Setting 2] menu (p.91).
- The focusing area is fixed to [·] regardless of this setting when using lenses other than DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA or F lens. (p.337)

Setting the Focus Position in the Viewfinder

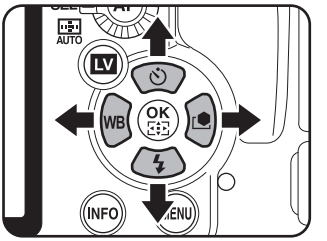
1 Set the AF point switching dial to SEL.

[✥] appears in the viewfinder and the AF point can be changed.



2 Look through the viewfinder and check the position of the subject.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to change the AF point.

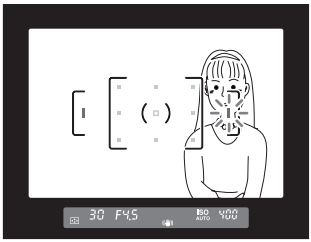


The selected AF point appears in the status screen.

Available operations

OK button	Returns the AF point to the center of the AF frame.
Press and hold **OK** button	Disables changing the AF point and enables direct key operation of the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶). To enable changing the AF point, press the **OK** button while direct key operation is enabled. You will hear a beep when switching between enabled and disabled.

The AF point(s) light red in the viewfinder (Superimpose AF Area) and you can check where you set the AF point.



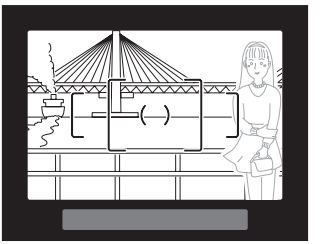
- The position of the changed AF point is stored even if the camera is turned off or the focusing area is switched to [-] or [AUTO].
- [✥] appears in the viewfinder when the AF point can be changed.
- When any of the following operations are performed, changing of the AF point (in Step 3) is canceled.
  - the main switch is turned off
  - the mode dial is turned
  - the AF point switching dial is turned
  - the ▶ button, **MENU** button, **INFO** button or **LV** button is pressed

Locking the Focus (Focus Lock)

If the subject is outside the range of the focusing area, the camera cannot automatically focus on the subject. In this case, focus the camera on the subject in the focusing area, lock the focus at that position (Focus Lock), and then recompose your picture.

1 Set the focus mode lever to AF.S.

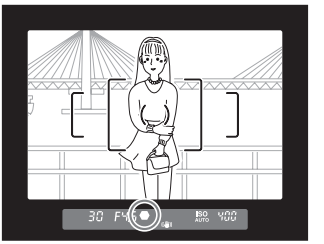
2 Frame the desired composition for your picture in the viewfinder.



Example) The person is out of focus and the background is focused instead.

3 Center the subject to focus in the viewfinder and press the shutter release button halfway.

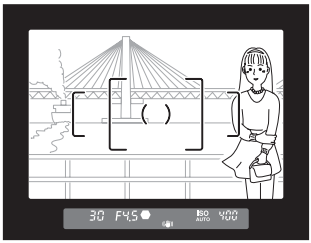
The focus indicator ● appears and you will hear a beep when the subject comes into focus. (When blinking, the subject is not in focus.)



4 Lock the focus.

Keep the shutter release button pressed halfway. The focus will remain locked.

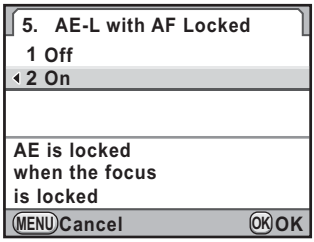
5 Recompose the picture while keeping the shutter release button pressed halfway.



- The focus is locked while the focus indicator ● is displayed.
- Turning the zoom ring with the focus locked may cause the subject to be out of focus.
- The beep that sounds when the image is focused can be turned off. (p.288)

Locking Exposure when the Focus is Locked

Set [5. AE-L with AF Locked] in the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu (p.91) to lock the exposure value while the focus is locked.



1	Off	Exposure is not locked when the focus is locked. (default setting)
2	On	Exposure is locked when the focus is locked.

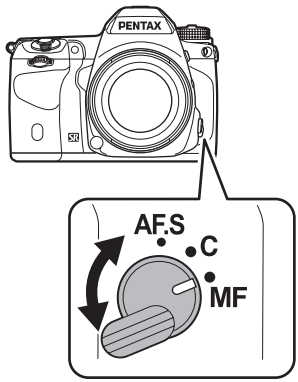
Adjusting the Focus Manually (Manual Focus)

When you adjust the focus manually, you can use either the focus indicator or the matte field in the viewfinder.

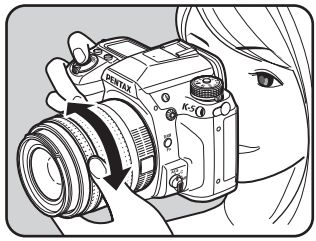
Using the Focus Indicator

The focus indicator ● appears in the viewfinder when the subject is in focus even during manual focus.
You can manually adjust the focus using the focus indicator ●.

1 Set the focus mode lever to MF.



2 Look through the viewfinder, press the shutter release button halfway and turn the focusing ring.



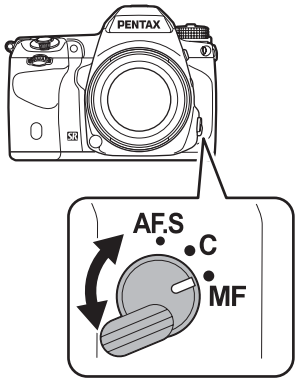
The focus indicator ● appears and you will hear a beep when the subject comes into focus.

- Adjust the focus manually using the matte field in the viewfinder when the subject is difficult to focus (p.75) and the focus indicator will not appear.
- The beep that sounds when the image is focused can be turned off. (p.288)

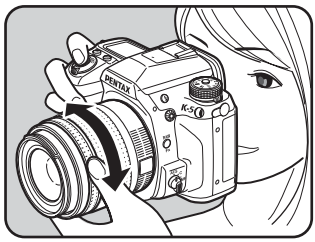
Using the Viewfinder Matte Field

You can manually adjust the focus using the matte field in viewfinder.

1 Set the focus mode lever to MF.



2 Look through the viewfinder and turn the focusing ring until the subject is clearly visible in the viewfinder.



Shooting in Catch-in Focus Mode

When [25. Catch-in Focus] in the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu (p.92) is set to [On], if the focus mode is set to **AF.S** and one of the following types of lenses is attached, catch-in focus shooting is enabled and the shutter is released automatically when the subject comes into focus.

- Manual focus lens
- DA or FA lens that has a **AF** and **MF** setting on the lens (the setting on the lens must be set to **MF** before shooting)

● **How to Take Pictures**

1 Attach a proper lens to the camera.
2 Set the focus mode lever to **AF.S**.
3 Set the focus on a position the subject will pass.
4 Press the shutter release button fully.
The shutter is released automatically when the subject comes into focus at the set position.

Checking the Composition, Exposure and Focus Before Shooting (Preview)

You can use the preview function to check depth of field, composition, exposure and focus before taking a picture.
There are two preview methods.

Preview Method	Description
Optical Preview	For checking the depth of field with the viewfinder.
DIGITAL Digital Preview	For checking the composition, exposure and focus on the monitor.

memo You can also use the Live View function to display a real-time image on the monitor and change the shooting function settings during display and check the settings by enlarging the image. Refer to p.165 for details.

Selecting the Preview Method

Choose whether to use Optical Preview or Digital Preview when the main switch is turned to the preview position (⟲).
The default setting is Optical Preview.

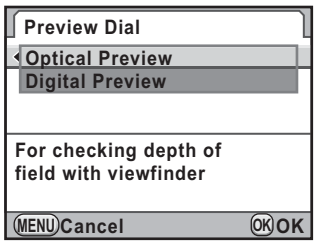
1 Select [Button Customization] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Button Customization] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Preview Dial] and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Preview Dial] screen appears.

3 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Optical Preview] or [Digital Preview].



4 Press the OK button.

5 Press the MENU button three times.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

memo

- While shooting with Interval Shooting, Multi-exposure or Live View, Optical Preview is used regardless of the setting.
- Digital Preview can also be assigned to the **RAW/Fx** button. If Optical Preview is assigned to the Preview dial and Digital Preview is assigned to the **RAW/Fx** button, you can use both preview functions easily. Refer to p.285 for assigning a function to the **RAW/Fx** button.

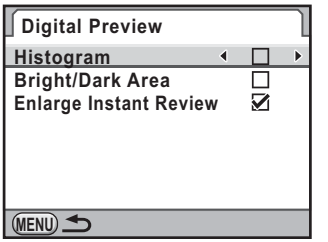
Setting the Display for Digital Preview

For Digital Preview, you can set whether to display the histogram and Bright/Dark Area warning, and whether to enable enlarging images.

1 Select [Digital Preview] in the [Rec. Mode 5] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Digital Preview] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Histogram], [Bright/Dark Area] or [Enlarge Instant Review].

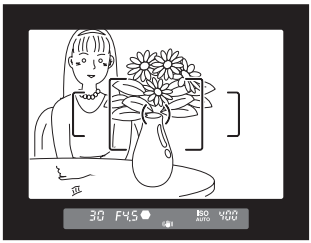


3 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.

4 Press the MENU button twice.

Displaying the Optical Preview

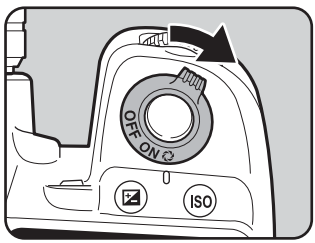
1 **Position the subject inside the AF frame and press the shutter release button halfway to focus on the subject.**



2 **Turn the main switch to ⟳ while looking through the viewfinder.**

You can check the depth of field in the viewfinder while the main switch is set to the position ⟳.

During this time, no shooting information is displayed in the viewfinder, and the shutter cannot be released.

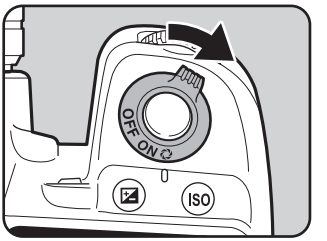


3 **Take your finger off the main switch.**

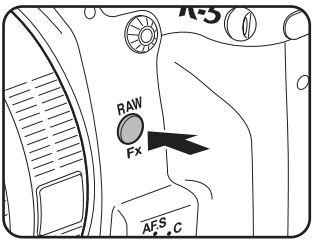
Optical Preview is ended and the camera is ready to take a picture.

Displaying the Digital Preview

1 Focus on the subject, then compose the picture in the viewfinder and turn the main switch to ⟲.



When Digital Preview is assigned to the **RAW**/**Fx** button, press the **RAW**/**Fx** button.



The icon (⟲) appears on the monitor during preview and you can check the composition, exposure and focus.

Available operations

Rear e-dial (⟲)	Enlarges the preview image. (p.237)
AE-L button	Saves the preview image. Select [Save as] and press the **OK** button.

2 Press the shutter release button halfway.

Digital Preview is ended and the autofocus system operates.

memo The maximum display time for Digital Preview is 60 seconds.

Using the Shake Reduction Function to Prevent Camera Shake

Using the Shake Reduction Function

The Shake Reduction function reduces camera shake that occurs when the shutter release button is pressed. This is useful for taking pictures in situations where camera shake is likely to occur. The Shake Reduction function allows you to take pictures at approximately 4 steps slower shutter speed without a risk of the camera shake.
The Shake Reduction function is ideal when taking pictures in the following situations.

- When taking pictures in dimly lit locations, such as indoors, at night, on cloudy days and in the shade
- When taking telephoto pictures

Blurred picture

Picture taken with the Shake Reduction function

The Shake Reduction function can be used to reduce horizontal and vertical camera shake or keep the image level.

Caution

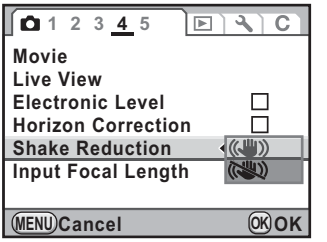
- The Shake Reduction function does not compensate for blurring caused by subject movement. To take pictures of a moving subject, increase the shutter speed.
- The Shake Reduction function may not fully reduce camera shake when taking close-up shots. In this case, it is recommended to turn off the Shake Reduction function and use the camera with a tripod.
- The Shake Reduction function will not fully work when shooting with a very slow shutter speed, for example when panning or shooting night scenes. In this case, it is recommended to turn off the Shake Reduction function and use the camera with a tripod.

Reducing Vertical and Horizontal Camera Shake

1 **Select [Shake Reduction] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).**

2 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select (( )) or (( )) and press the OK button.**

(( ))	Uses Shake Reduction. (default setting)
(( ))	Does not use Shake Reduction.



3 **Press the MENU button.**

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

4 **Aim the camera at the subject and press the shutter release button halfway.**

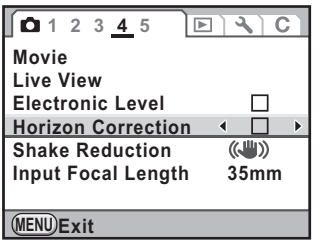
(( )) appears in the viewfinder and the Shake Reduction function is activated.

Correcting the Tilt of the Images

When an image is tilted, it can be corrected up to a maximum of ±2 degrees.

1 **Select [Horizon Correction] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu.**

2 **Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.**



3 Press the MENU button.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

4 Aim the camera at the subject and press the shutter release button halfway.

The following indicators appear on the status screen.

	Shake Reduction On + Horizon Correction On
	Shake Reduction Off + Horizon Correction On

Caution

- Set [Shake Reduction] to (Off) when using the camera with a tripod or when this function is not needed.
- The Shake Reduction function automatically turns off in the following situations. Note that the Shake Reduction function cannot be selected when the following functions are set.
  - **B** (Bulb) mode
  - Self-timer shooting
  - Remote Control shooting
  - Mirror Lock-up shooting
  - when [Auto Align] is set to □ (Off) in the [HDR Capture] setting
  - when using the flash in wireless mode

memo

- The Shake Reduction function will not fully work (for about 2 seconds) right after turning on the camera or restoring from Auto Power Off. Wait for the Shake Reduction function to become stable, and then press the shutter button gently. If appears in the viewfinder when you press the shutter release button halfway, the camera is ready to take a picture.
- The Shake Reduction function is available with any K-5 compatible PENTAX lens. However, when the aperture ring is set to a position other than the **A** (Auto) position for a lens with a **A** position or a lens without an **A** position is used, the camera will not operate unless [27. Using Aperture Ring] is set to [Permitted] in the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu. Set this beforehand. In such cases, however, some functions will be restricted. Refer to “Notes on [27. Using Aperture Ring]” (p.339) for details.

When the Focal Length Cannot Be Automatically Detected

The Shake Reduction function operates by obtaining the lens information such as focal length.
If the camera uses a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA or F lens, the lens information is automatically obtained when the Shake Reduction function is activated.
If you use a lens whose information such as focal length cannot be automatically obtained (p.337), the [Input Focal Length] setting screen appears when the camera is turned on with the Shake Reduction function set to (((✋))) (On).
Set the focal length manually in the [Input Focal Length] setting screen.

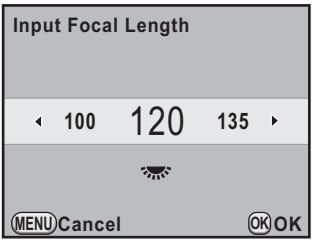
Caution

- The [Input Focal Length] setting screen does not appear when using a lens whose information such as focal length can be automatically obtained.
- When using a lens without the **A** position on the aperture or with the aperture set to a position other than **A**, set [27. Using Aperture Ring] in the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu to [Permitted]. (p.339)
- The effect of Shake Reduction is influenced by the shooting distance as well as focal length information. The Shake Reduction function may not work as effectively as expected when shooting at close ranges.

1 Use the four-way controller (◄►) or the rear e-dial (🔄) to set the focal length.

Select from the following 34 focal length values. (The default setting is 35 mm.)

8	10	12	15	18	20	24	28	30	35
40	45	50	55	65	70	75	85	100	120
135	150	180	200	250	300	350	400	450	500
550	600	700	800						



memo

- If the focal length for your lens is not listed above, select the value closest to the actual focal length (example: [18] for 17 mm and [100] for 105 mm).
- When using a zoom lens, select the actual focal length at the zoom setting being used in the same manner.

2 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

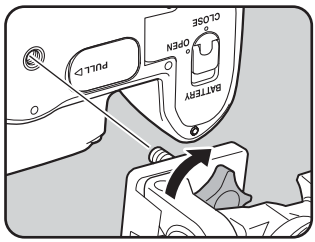
memo To change the focal length setting, use [Input Focal Length] in the [Rec. Mode 4] menu (p.90).

Shooting with Self-timer

This camera has the following two types of self-timers.

Self-timer (12 sec.)	Shutter is released after about 12 seconds. Use this mode to include the photographer in the picture.
Self-timer (2 sec.)	A mirror pops up immediately after the shutter release button is pressed. The shutter is released after about 2 seconds. Use this mode to avoid camera shake when the shutter release button is pressed.

1 Mount the camera onto a tripod.

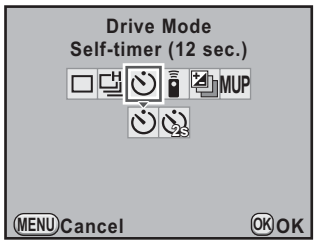


2 Press the four-way controller (▲) in Capture mode.

The [Drive Mode] screen appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select ⏲.

4 Press the four-way controller (▼) and use the four-way controller (◄►) to select ⏲ or ⏲2s.



5 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

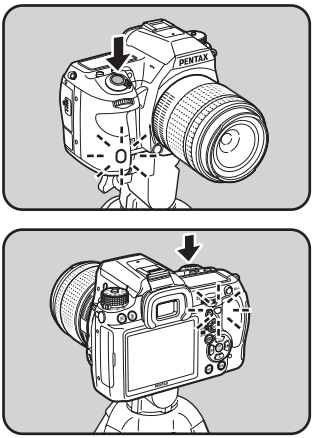
6 Press the shutter release button halfway.

The autofocus system operates. The focus indicator ● appears in the viewfinder when focused.

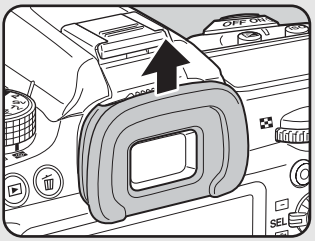
7 Press the shutter release button fully.

For ⏲, the front and back self-timer lamps start blinking slowly and blink rapidly 2 seconds before the shutter is released. The beep is heard and the rate increases. The shutter will be released about 12 seconds after the shutter release button is pressed fully.

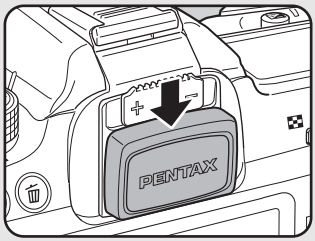
For ⏲₂, the shutter will be released about 2 seconds after the shutter release button is pressed fully.



- Select a mode other than ⏲ or ⏲2s in the [Drive Mode] screen to cancel the Self-timer shooting. The setting is canceled when the camera is turned off if [Drive Mode] is set to □ (Off) in [Memory] (p.312) of the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu.
- The Shake Reduction function is automatically turned off when ⏲ or ⏲2s is set.
- You can set the camera so that the beep does not sound. (p.288)
- The exposure may be affected if light enters the viewfinder. Use the AE Lock function (p.121) or attach the provided ME viewfinder cap. The light entering the viewfinder has no effect on the exposure when the exposure mode is set to **M** (Manual).



Removing the Eyecup FR



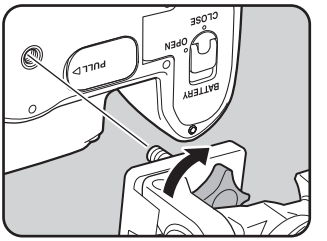
Attaching the ME Viewfinder cap

Shooting with Remote Control (Optional)

The shutter can be released from a distance by using the optional remote control unit (p.349).
You can select from the following three settings for Remote Control shooting.

Remote Control	The shutter is released immediately after the shutter release button on the remote control unit is pressed.
Remote Control (3s delay)	The shutter is released about 3 seconds after the shutter release button on the remote control unit is pressed.
Remote Continuous Shooting	Continuous shooting starts when the shutter release button on the remote control unit is pressed. Press the shutter release button on the remote control unit again to exit continuous shooting.

1 Mount the camera onto a tripod.



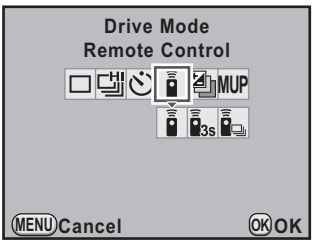
2 Press the four-way controller (▲) in Capture mode.

The [Drive Mode] screen appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select .

4 Press the four-way controller (▼) and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select , , or .

appears on the LCD panel. The self-timer lamp will blink and the camera is in a stand-by status.



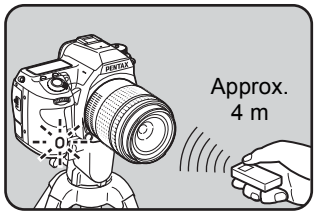
5 Press the OK button.

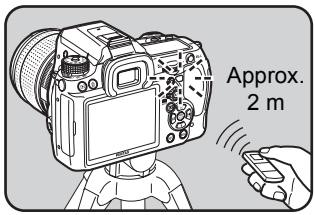
The camera is ready to take a picture.

6 Press the shutter release button halfway.

The autofocus system operates. The focus indicator ● appears in the viewfinder when focused.

1 Point the remote control unit towards the remote control receiver on the front or back of the camera and press the shutter release button on the remote control.

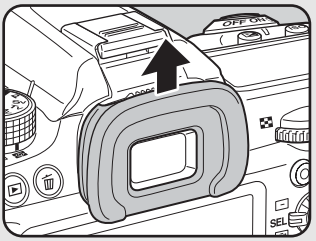




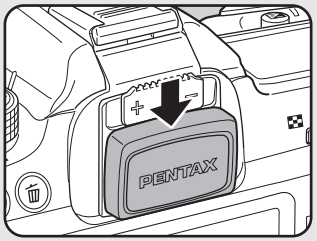
The operating distance of the remote control unit is approximately 4 m from the front of the camera and approximately 2 m from the back of the camera.

After a picture is taken, the self-timer lamp lights for 2 seconds and then returns to blinking.

- By default, you cannot adjust the focus with the remote control unit. Focus on the subject first with the camera before operating with the remote control. When [18. AF with Remote Control] is set to [On] in the [**C** Custom Setting 3] menu (p.92), you can use the remote control unit to adjust the focus. (AF cannot be used with the remote control unit during Live View.)
- When using the Remote Control Waterproof O-RC1, AF can be operated with the ⅕ button. The **Fn** button cannot be used.
- Select a mode other than , , or in the [Drive Mode] screen to cancel the Remote Control shooting. The setting is canceled when the camera is turned off if [Drive Mode] is set to □ (Off) in [Memory] (p.312) of the [Rec. Mode 5] menu.
- The Shake Reduction function is automatically turned off when , , or is set.
- The exposure may be affected if light enters the viewfinder. Use the AE Lock function (p.121) or attach the provided ME viewfinder cap. The light entering the viewfinder has no effect on the exposure when the exposure mode is set to **M** (Manual).



Removing the Eyecup FR



Attaching the
ME Viewfinder cap

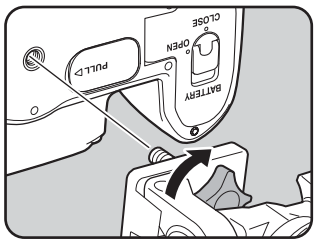
- The remote control may not operate in backlit conditions.
- The Remote Control F can send a remote control signal about 30,000 times. Contact a PENTAX Service Center to replace the battery (this will involve a fee).

Shooting with the Mirror Lock-up Function

Use the Mirror Lock-up function if camera shake is evident even when the remote control or cable switch is used with a tripod.
For Mirror Lock-up Shooting, press the shutter release button to raise the mirror up and press it again to release the shutter.
The following two types of Mirror Lock-up shooting are available.

M.UP Mirror Up	Mirror Lock-up shooting with the shutter release button.
M.UP Mirror Up Remote Control	Mirror Lock-up shooting with the remote control. The shutter will be released immediately after the shutter release button on the remote control unit is pressed (p.145).

1 Mount the camera onto a tripod.



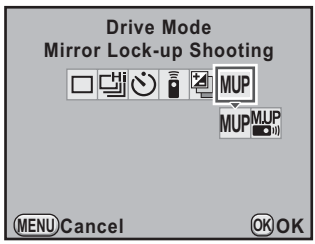
2 Press the four-way controller (▲) in Capture mode.

The [Drive Mode] screen appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select M.UP.

4 Press the four-way controller (▼) and use the four-way controller (◄►) to select M.UP or M.UP.

M.UP appears in the status screen and on the LCD panel.



5 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

6 Press the shutter release button halfway.

The autofocus system operates. The focus indicator ● appears in the viewfinder when focused.

7 Press the shutter release button fully.

The mirror pops up and you will hear a beep. The AE Lock function is enabled with the exposure value set immediately before the mirror pops up.

8 Press the shutter release button fully again.

The shutter is released and the picture is taken.

- Select a mode other than **M.UP** or M.UP in the [Drive Mode] screen to cancel Mirror Lock-up shooting. The setting is canceled when the camera is turned off if [Drive Mode] is set to □ (Off) in [Memory] (p.312) of the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu.
- The mirror automatically returns to its original position if 1 minute elapses after the mirror pops up when the shutter release button is pressed for the first time (except while using Multi-exposure).
- The Shake Reduction function is automatically turned off when **M.UP** or M.UP is set.
- The beep that sounds when the mirror pops up can be turned off. (p.288)

Continuous Shooting

Pictures can be taken continuously while the shutter release button is kept pressed.
The following two types of Continuous Shooting are available.

連Hi	Continuous Shooting (Hi)	For JPEG image with 16M/★★★, up to approx. 30 frames are taken continuously at a maximum of approx. 7.0 fps.
連Lo	Continuous Shooting (Lo)	For JPEG image with 16M/★★★, pictures are taken continuously at a maximum of approx. 1.6 fps until the SD Memory Card is full.

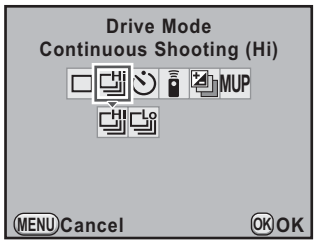
memo When the file format is [RAW] (PEF), up to approx. 20 frames for 連Hi and up to approx. 40 frames for 連Lo can be taken continuously.

1 Press the four-way controller (▲) in Capture mode.

The [Drive Mode] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select 連Hi.

3 Press the four-way controller (▼) and use the four-way controller (◄►) to select 連Hi or 連Lo.



4 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

5 Press the shutter release button halfway.

The autofocus system operates. The focus indicator ● appears in the viewfinder when focused.

6 Press the shutter release button fully.

Pictures are taken continuously while the shutter release button is fully pressed. Take your finger off the shutter release button to stop.

memo

- If the focus mode is set to **AF.S** (Single mode), the focus position is locked in the first frame and pictures are taken continuously at the same interval.
- Focusing is continuously activated during Continuous Shooting when the focus mode is set to **AF.C** (Continuous mode).
- You can also use the remote control for Continuous Shooting. (p.145)
- The shutter cannot be released until charging is complete when using the built-in flash. You can set the camera to enable shutter release before the built-in flash is ready in [20. Release While Charging] of the [**C** Custom Setting 3] menu. (p.82)
- Select a mode other than 🖳 or 🖳 in the [Drive Mode] screen to cancel the Continuous Shooting. The setting is canceled when the camera is turned off if [Drive Mode] is set to □ (Off) in [Memory] (p.312) of the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu.
- The shooting speed may be slower when [Lens Correction] (p.218) is set to On.

Interval Shooting

During Interval Shooting, pictures are taken at a set interval from a set time.

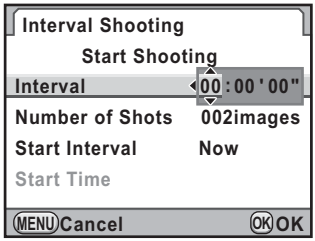
Caution

- Interval Shooting is not available in the following situations.
  - when the exposure mode is set to **USER**, ■ (Green), **B** (Bulb), or 🎥 (Movie)
  - when Extended Bracketing, Digital Filter or HDR Capture is set
- When Interval Shooting is set, Multi-exposure is not available.

1 Select [Interval Shooting] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Interval Shooting] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Interval].



When taking two or more pictures, set the wait time until the next picture is taken.

Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select the number of hours, minutes, and seconds, and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to set the time.

You can set up to 24 hours, 00 minutes, and 00 seconds.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Number of Shots].

Set the number of shots to be taken.

Press the four-way controller (►) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the number of shots to be taken.

You can select between 1 and 999 shots.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Start Interval].

Set the time when the first picture is taken.

Press the four-way controller (►) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Now] or [Set Time].

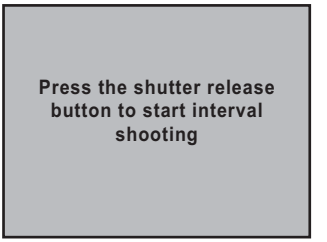
Now	Shooting starts immediately. You can take two or more pictures.
Set Time	Shooting starts at the set time. Press the four-way controller (▼) to select [Start Time], use the four-way controller (◄►) to select the time, and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to set the start time.

5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Start Shooting] and press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a series of interval pictures.

6 Press the shutter release button halfway.

The focus indicator ● appears when focused.



7 Press the shutter release button fully.

When [Start Interval] is set to [Now], the first picture is taken. When set to [Set Time], shooting starts at the set time.

For shooting multiple pictures, pictures are taken at the interval set in Step 2.

After the set number of pictures is taken, the camera returns to normal Capture mode.

memo

- The camera cannot be operated during Interval Shooting. To cancel the Interval Shooting, press any button on the back of the camera or press the shutter release button and the **MENU** button to display the exit confirmation screen, and then use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Exit] and press the **OK** button. You can also exit the Interval Shooting by turning the main switch off or turning the mode dial.
- [Single Frame Shooting] is selected regardless of the current drive mode setting.
- If the subject is not in focus with the focus mode set to **AF.S** (Single mode) or if the [Interval] setting is too short and the previous image processing cannot be completed before taking the next picture, no picture may be taken.
- Although each shot taken is displayed on the monitor with Instant Review, they cannot be enlarged or deleted.
- The [Interval] setting is disabled when [Number of Shots] is set to [1].
- Interval Shooting is canceled when the SD Memory Card has no more available space.
- If the Auto Power Off function (p.304) turns the camera off during Interval Shooting, the camera automatically turns on again when the shooting time approaches.
- It is recommended to use the AC adapter kit K-AC50 (optional) when using the Interval Shooting over a long period of time. (p.53)

Multi-exposure

You can create a composite picture by taking multiple frames.

Caution

- Multi-exposure is not available in the following situations.
  - when the exposure mode is set to ■ (Green) or 🎥 (Movie)
  - when Digital Filter, HDR Capture or Cross Processing is set
- When Multi-exposure is set, the following functions are not available.
  - Exposure Bracketing, Extended Bracketing or Interval Shooting (The function selected last is used)
  - Lens Correction

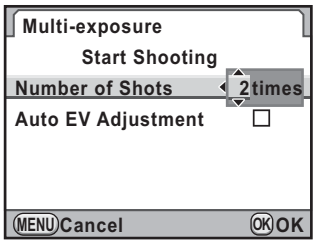
1 Select [Multi-exposure] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Multi-exposure] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Number of Shots].

3 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the number of shots.

Select from 2 to 9 shots.



4 Press the OK button.

5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Auto EV Adjustment] and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.

When set to ☑ (On), the exposure is adjusted automatically according to the number of shots.

6 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Start Shooting] and press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

1 Take a picture.

The composite picture is displayed in Instant Review each time the shutter release button is pressed. Press the 🗑 button during Instant Review to discard pictures taken up to that point and take pictures again from the first frame.

The pictures are saved when the set number of shots is taken, and then the [Multi-exposure] screen appears again.

memo

- If any of the following operations are performed while shooting, the pictures that have been already taken are saved and Multi-exposure is ended.
  - when the ▶ button, **MENU** button, four-way controller (▲▼◀▶), **INFO** button or **RAW**/**Fx** button is pressed
  - when the mode dial is turned
  - when Exposure Bracketing is set
- When shooting in Multi-exposure mode using Live View, a semi-transparent composite image of the pictures taken is displayed. (It is not displayed when the camera is connected to an AV device.)

Shooting while Adjusting the Settings (Auto Bracketing)

Auto Bracketing is a function for shooting while automatically changing the camera settings. There are two Auto Bracketing modes: Exposure Bracketing and Extended Bracketing.
You can set Auto Bracketing Order in [8. Auto Bracketing Order] in the [**C** Custom Setting 2] menu (p.91).

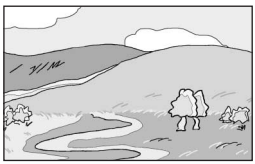
1	0 - +	Standard → Underexposed → Overexposed (default setting)
2	- 0 +	Underexposed → Standard → Overexposed
3	+ 0 -	Overexposed → Standard → Underexposed
4	0 + -	Standard → Overexposed → Underexposed

Shooting while the Exposure is Automatically Changed (Exposure Bracketing)

You can take continuous pictures with different exposures when the shutter release button is pressed. You can select to take 2 images (Standard/+), 2 images (Standard/-), 3 images or 5 images. When taking 3 pictures, the first image is exposed with no compensation, the second image is underexposed (negative compensation) and the third image is overexposed (positive compensation).

Standard exposure

Underexposure



Overexposure

Caution

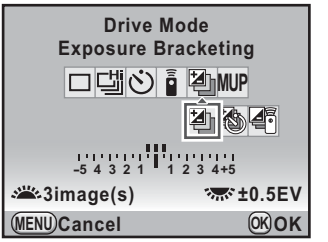
- Exposure Bracketing is not available in the following situations.
  - when the exposure mode is set to **B** (Bulb)
  - when HDR Capture is set
- Exposure Bracketing and Multi-exposure cannot be used at the same time. The function selected last is used.

1 Press the four-way controller (▲) in Capture mode.

The [Drive Mode] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select .

3 Press the four-way controller (▼) and use the four-way controller (◄►) to select , , or .



	Exposure Bracketing	Takes pictures with the shutter release button.
	Exposure Bracketing + Self-timer	Takes pictures with the self-timer. Self-timer operates according to the self-timer (p.143) setting.
	Exposure Bracketing + Remote Control	Takes pictures with the remote control. Remote control operates according to the remote control (p.145) setting. When set to (Remote Continuous Shooting), the shutter is released immediately.

4 Turn the front e-dial ( ) to set the number of shots.

Select [2 images (+)], [2 images (-)], [3 images] or [5 images].

5 Turn the rear e-dial ( ) to set the bracketing amount.

The following values can be set according to the step interval set in [1. EV Steps] (p.120) in the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu.

Step Interval	Bracketing Amount
1/3 EV	±0.3, ±0.7, ±1.0, ±1.3, ±1.7, ±2.0
1/2 EV	±0.5, ±1.0, ±1.5, ±2.0

Available operations

± button + Rear e-dial (⟳)	Adjusts the EV compensation when taking only underexposed or overexposed images with Exposure Bracketing. Images are taken with an EV compensation value set to 0 (intermediate value). (Up to ±8 EV)
⦿ button	Resets the compensation value to ±0.

6 Press the OK button.

The value for the first image blinks on the monitor.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

7 Press the shutter release button halfway.

When the subject is in focus, the focus indicator ● appears in the viewfinder and the EV compensation value appears on the status screen and LCD panel and in the viewfinder.

8 Press the shutter release button fully.

Continue to press the shutter release button until the set number of shots has been captured.

Consecutive images will be taken according to the order set in [8. Auto Bracketing Order] of the [**C** Custom Setting 2] menu (p.91).

memo

- When the focus mode is set to **AF.S** (Single mode), the focus position is locked in the first image and is used for subsequent images.
- When you take your finger off the shutter release button during Exposure Bracketing, the exposure setting will remain effective for twice the amount of the exposure metering timer (default setting is about 20 seconds) (p.118) and you can take a picture at the next compensation value. In this case, autofocus works for each image. After about twice the amount of the exposure metering timer elapses, the camera returns to settings for taking the first image.
- When [9. One-Push Bracketing] in the [**C** Custom Setting 2] menu (p.91) is set to [On], even if the shutter release button is not continuously pressed fully, all images are automatically shot with one press of the shutter release button.
- You can combine Exposure Bracketing with the built-in flash or external flash (P-TTL auto only) to change only the flash output continuously. However, when using an external flash, holding the shutter release button down to take consecutive images may cause the second and third images to be taken before the flash is fully charged. Take each image after confirming that charging is complete.
- If you use Exposure Bracketing frequently, you can assign it to the **RAW**/**Fx** button. (p.279)

Shooting while Adjusting Other Settings (Extended Bracketing)

You can save pictures with three different levels of White Balance, Saturation, Hue, High/Low Key Adjustment, Contrast and Sharpness. Unlike Exposure Bracketing, three pictures are saved each time the shutter is released.

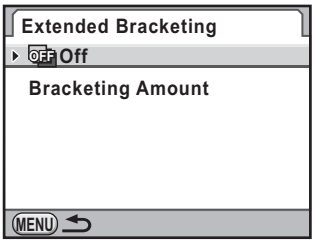
Caution

- When Extended Bracketing is set, the file format is always set to [JPEG] and cannot be changed. You cannot use Extended Bracketing when the file format is set to [RAW] or [RAW+].
- When Extended Bracketing is set, the following functions are not available.
  - Interval Shooting or Multi-exposure
  - Cross Processing, Digital Filter or HDR Capture (The function selected last is used)

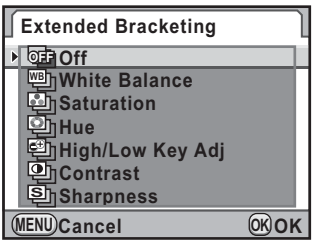
1 Select [Extended Bracketing] in the [Rec. Mode 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Extended Bracketing] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▶).

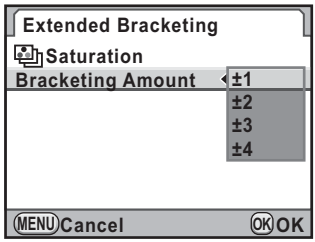


3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select an item and press the OK button.



4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Bracketing Amount] and press the four-way controller (▶).

5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the bracketing amount and press the OK button.



Select [±1] (default setting), [±2], [±3] or [±4].

For [White Balance], select from [BA±1] (default setting), [BA±2], [BA±3], [GM±1], [GM±2] or [GM±3].

6 Press the MENU button twice.

The camera returns to Capture mode.

7 Take a picture.

Three images are saved.

memo

- Exposure Bracketing and Extended Bracketing can be used at the same time. When used at the same time, each time the shutter is released for Exposure Bracketing, three images with Extended Bracketing applied are saved.
- Parameters that cannot be set due to the image finishing tone setting of Custom Image also cannot be set for Extended Bracketing. (Example: When set to [Monochrome], Saturation and Hue cannot be selected for Extended Bracketing) (p.222)
- When [Fine Sharpness] or [Extra Sharpness] is set for Custom Image, the sharpness of Extended Bracketing operates as Fine Sharpness or Extra Sharpness.
- When [Contrast] is set for Custom Image, the contrast of Extended Bracketing operates according to the [Contrast] setting.

Taking Pictures Using Digital Filters

You can apply a filter when taking pictures.
The following filters can be selected.

Filter Name	Effect	Parameter
Toy Camera	For taking pictures that look as if taken with a toy camera.	Shading Level: +1 to +3
		Blur: +1 to +3
		Tone Break: Red/Green/Blue/Yellow
Retro	For taking pictures with the look of old photos.	Toning: -3 to +3
		Frame Composite: None/Thin/ Medium/Thick
High Contrast	For taking pictures with high contrasts.	+1 to +5
Extract Color	For extracting two specific colors and making the rest of the image black and white.	Extracted Color 1: Red/Magenta/ Blue/Cyan/Green/Yellow
		Extractable Range of Color 1: -2 to +2
		Extracted Color 2: Red/Magenta/ Blue/Cyan/Green/Yellow/OFF
		Extractable Range of Color 2: -2 to +2
Soft *1	For taking pictures with a soft focus throughout the image.	Soft Focus: +1 to +3
		Shadow Blur: OFF/ON
Starburst *1	For taking pictures of night scenes or lights reflected on water with a special sparkling look by adding extra glitter to the highlights.	Shape: Cross/Star/Snow Crystal/ Heart/Musical Note
		Effect Density: Small/Medium/Large
		Size: Small/Medium/Large
		Angle: 0°/30°/45°/60°
Fish-eye *1	For taking pictures that look as if taken with a fish-eye lens.	Weak/Medium/Strong

Filter Name	Effect	Parameter
Custom Filter *1	Customize and save a filter to your own preferences.	High Contrast: OFF/+1 to +5
		Soft Focus: OFF/+1 to +3
		Tone Break: OFF/Red/Green/Blue/ Yellow
		Shading Type: 6 types
		Shading Level: -3 to +3
		Distortion Type: 3 types
		Distortion Level: OFF/Weak/ Medium/Strong
		Invert Color: OFF/ON
Color *2	For taking pictures with the selected color filter. Select from 18 filters (6 colors × 3 tones).	Color: Red/Magenta/Blue/Cyan/ Green/Yellow
		Color Density: Light/Standard/Dark

*1 Not available when the exposure mode is set to 🎥 (Movie).
*2 Available only when the exposure mode is set to 🎥 (Movie).

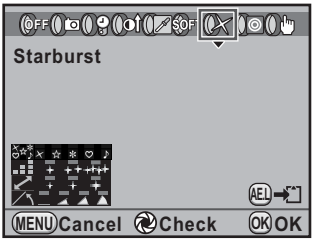
Caution
- When Digital Filter is set, the file format is always set to [JPEG] and cannot be changed. You cannot use Digital Filter when the file format is set to [RAW] or [RAW+].
- When Digital Filter is set, the following functions are not available.
  - Interval Shooting, Multi-exposure, Continuous Shooting
  - Extended Bracketing or HDR Capture (The function selected last is used)

memo
Depending on the filter used, it may take longer to save images.

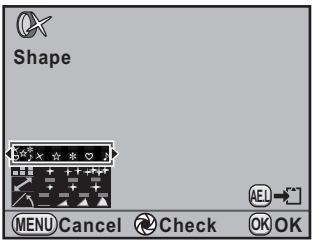
1 Select [Digital Filter] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The screen for selecting a filter appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select a filter.



3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the parameter and the four-way controller (◀▶) to adjust the parameter's value.



Available operations

Main switch (⟲)	Uses Digital Preview to preview the background image with the filter effect applied. (Not available when the exposure mode is set to 🎥 (Movie).)
AE-L button	Saves the background image. Select [Save as] and press the **OK** button.

4 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

memo

- When the exposure mode is set to 🎥 (Movie), change the settings from [Movie] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu. (p.171)
- Select [Not use any filters] in Step 2 to finish shooting with digital filter.
- You can also apply digital filter after shooting them to JPEG/RAW images in Playback mode. (p.265)

Shooting with Live View

You can shoot a picture while displaying the real-time image on the monitor.

Caution

- The image in Live View may differ from the captured image if the brightness of the subject is low or high.
- If any changes occur in the shooting light source during Live View, the image may flicker.
- If the camera position is changed rapidly during Live View, the image may not be displayed with the appropriate brightness. Wait for the display to become stable before shooting.
- Noise may appear on the Live View image when used in dark locations.
- Live View can be displayed for up to 5 minutes. When Live View is ended after the elapse of 5 minutes, Live View can be restarted by pressing the LV button.
- If you continue shooting with Live View for a prolonged period, the internal temperature of the camera may increase, resulting in lower quality images. It is recommended that you turn off Live View when not shooting. To prevent the image quality from degrading, allow enough time for the camera to cool down while shooting with long exposures or recording movies.
- If the internal temperature of the camera becomes high, 🌡 (temperature warning) will appear on the monitor and Live View may not be available.
- If Live View is used in places where the camera may become hot, such as in direct sunlight, 🌡 (temperature warning) may appear on the monitor. Cancel Live View, as the internal temperature of the camera is rising.
- If Live View is used even after 🌡 (temperature warning) appears, Live View may end before 5 minutes elapse. Shooting with the viewfinder is available even if Live View is ended.
- The higher the sensitivity, the more noise and color unevenness may occur in the Live View image and/or captured image.

memo

- During Live View, nothing is displayed in the viewfinder.
- Holding the camera by hand and shooting while viewing the monitor may cause camera shake. Use of a tripod is recommended.
- The field of view of the image display is nearly 100%.
- You can use the provided AV cable (I-AVC7) or a commercially available HDMI cable to display Live View images on a TV or monitor. (p.256)
- Live View is not displayed when data is being saved to an SD Memory Card.

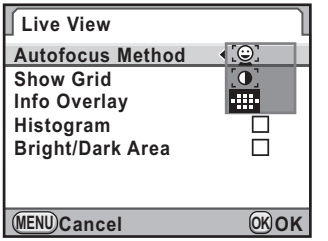
Setting Live View

You can set the display and autofocus mode for Live View.

1 Select [Live View] in the [Rec. Mode 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Live View] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select an autofocus method.



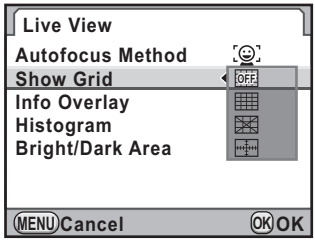
Face Detection AF	Gives autofocus priority to detected faces and performs contrast autofocus. A yellow frame appears for a main face (white frames appear for other faces), and autofocus and automatic exposure are performed for the main face. (default setting) The face detection is not performed when the focus mode is set to **MF**.
Contrast AF	Displays Live View and performs autofocus based on the information obtained from the image sensor.
Phase Difference AF	Cancels Live View and performs autofocus with the AF sensor. If the shutter release button is pressed halfway during Live View, the Live View image will disappear and the autofocus system operates. Once focused, the Live View image will be displayed again.

3 Press the OK button.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Show Grid] and press the four-way controller (▶).

5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a grid display type and press the OK button.

Select from [Off] (default setting), ▦ (4x4 Grid), ▩ (Golden Section) or ▭ (Scale).



6 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Info Overlay], [Histogram] or [Bright/Dark Area].

7 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select ☑ or □.

8 Press the MENU button twice.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

memo

It takes more time to focus on the subject when using [face] or [◑] than when using ▦. It is also difficult for the camera to focus on the following objects (or under the following conditions).

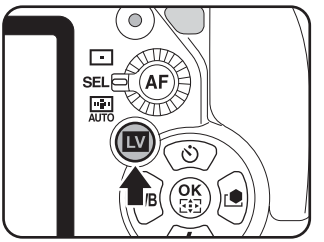
- objects with poor contrast
- objects with no vertical contrast, such as horizontal stripes
- objects with constantly changing brightness, shape, or color, such as a water fountain
- objects whose distance from the camera changes
- small objects
- objects appearing in both the foreground and background
- when using a special filter
- objects at the edge of the screen

Taking a Still Picture

1 Select an exposure mode.

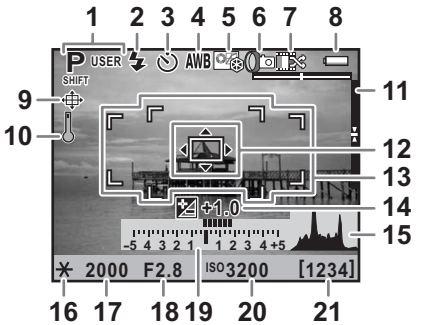
Set the mode dial to any mode other than 🎥.

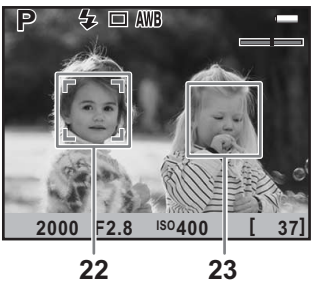
2 Press the LV button.



The mirror pops up and a real-time image is displayed on the monitor. Press the LV button again to exit Live View.

Live View display
(All of the indicators are displayed here for explanatory purposes.)





1 Exposure Mode
2 Flash Mode
3 Drive Mode
4 White Balance
5 Custom Image
6 Extended Bracketing/Multi-exposure/Interval Shooting/Digital Filter/HDR Capture
7 Number of shots using Multi-exposure/Cross Processing
8 Battery level
9 Adjusting composition
10 Temperature warning
11 Electronic Level
12 Contrast AF frame
13 Phase Difference AF frame/AF point
14 EV Compensation
15 Histogram
16 AE Lock
17 Shutter speed

18 Aperture value
19 EV bar
20 Sensitivity
21 Remaining image storage capacity
22 Main face detection frame (Face Detection AF)
23 Face detection frame (Face Detection AF)

* Indicator 9 is displayed when switching to Live View after adjusting the composition in [Composition Adjust.] (p.220) in the [📷 Rec. Mode 2] menu.
* Indicator 11 is displayed when [Electronic Level] is set to ☑ (On) (p.299). When the Electronic Level function is assigned to the **RAW**/**Fx** button (p.285), press the **RAW**/**Fx** button to switch the display on/off.
* Indicator 13 (Phase Difference AF frame) is displayed in white during Live View. When the subject is in focus, a green square frame is displayed instead. It turns red when the subject is not in focus. It is not displayed when the focus mode is set to **MF**.
* When 17, 18, and 20 can be changed, ▶ appears next to the set value.
* Indicators 22 and 23 are displayed when [Autofocus Method] is set to 😊 and the camera detects person's face(s). (Up to 16 face recognition frames are displayed on the monitor.) When the subject is in focus, a green frame is displayed. It turns red when the subject is not in focus.

Available operations

INFO button	Enlarges the image. 2, 4, or 6 times original size (when the focus mode is **AF**) 2, 4, 6, 8 or 10 times original size (when the focus mode is **MF**)
⊙ button	Returns the position of the display area to the center (during enlarged view).
Press and hold **OK** button *1	Switches the function of the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to Change AF point or direct key operation.
OK button *1	Returns the position of the AF point to the center (when Change AF point is enabled).
Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Changes the AF point (when Change AF point is enabled). Moves the display area (during enlarged view).

*1 Available only when [Autofocus Method] is 😊 or [◑], and the focus mode is **AF.S** or the AF point switching dial is set to **SEL** (Select).

3 Position the subject on the monitor and press the shutter release button halfway.

The autofocus system operates.

When the focus mode is set to **MF**, turn the focusing ring until the subject is clearly visible on the focusing screen.

4 Press the shutter release button fully.

The picture is taken.

- When the focus mode is set to **AF.C** and [Autofocus Method] is set to [◑], the camera focuses on the center of the screen when autofocus starts and then automatically tracks the subject when it is in focus. When [Autofocus Method] is set to [☺], the camera automatically tracks the detected face.
- Images captured in magnified display are recorded at normal size.
- You can check the depth of field on the monitor by turning the main switch to ⟲ during Live View.

Caution

The status screen and control panel cannot be displayed during Live View. To change the settings, press the **MENU** button and change them from each menu.

Recording Movies

You can record movies using Live View.

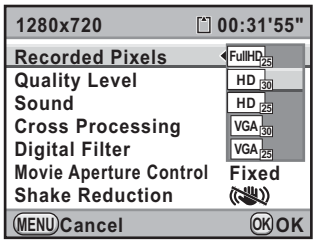
Changing the Movie Settings

You can record movies with monaural audio in AVI file format.

1 Select [Movie] in the [Rec. Mode 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Movie] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▶), use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the number of recorded pixels, and press the OK button.



Recorded Pixels	Pixels	Aspect Ratio	Frame Rate
FullHD	1920×1080	16:9	25 fps
HD (default setting)	1280×720	16:9	30 fps
HD	1280×720	16:9	25 fps
VGA	640×480	4:3	30 fps
VGA	640×480	4:3	25 fps

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Quality Level] and press the four-way controller (▶).

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the quality level and press the OK button.

Select from ★★★ (Best; default setting), ★★ (Better) and ★ (Good).
When the recorded pixels and quality level are changed, the amount of recordable time at that setting appears at the top right of the screen.

5 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Sound] and press the four-way controller (▶).**

6 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select 🔊 or 🔇 and press the OK button.**

🔊	Records sound. (default setting)
🔇	Does not record sound.

7 **Set Cross Processing and Digital Filter as necessary.**

Refer to p.225 for details on Cross Processing and p.162 for Digital Filter.

8 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Movie Aperture Control] and press the four-way controller (▶).**

9 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the [Fixed] or [Auto] and press the OK button.**

Fixed	The movie is recorded at the aperture value set before movie recording starts. (default setting)
Auto	The aperture is controlled automatically.

10 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Shake Reduction] and press the ▶ button.**

11 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select 🤚 or 🤚 and press the OK button.**

🤚	Uses Shake Reduction.
🤚	Does not use Shake Reduction. (default setting)

12 **Press the MENU button twice.**

The camera is ready to record a movie.

Connecting a Microphone

You can connect a commercially available stereo microphone to the microphone terminal on the camera and record stereo sound. Using an external microphone can also help to reduce the possibility of recording camera operation sounds.

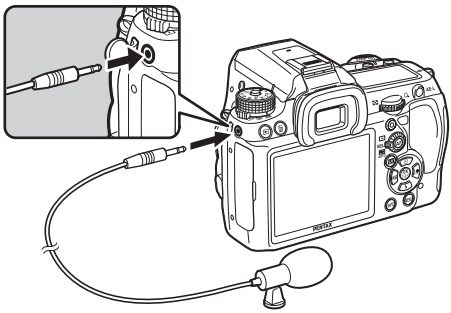
memo

The following specifications are recommended for external microphones.

- Plug: Stereo mini plug (ø3.5 mm)
- Format: Stereo electret condenser
- Power: Plug-in Power Method (operating voltage of 2.0 V or lower)
- Impedance: 2.2 kΩ

1 Turn off the camera.

2 Open the microphone terminal cover and connect the plug of the microphone to the microphone terminal on the camera.



3 Turn the camera on.

Caution

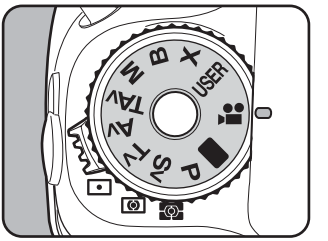
If the external microphone is disconnected during recording, the camera cannot switch to the internal microphone until recording has stopped. No sound will be recorded.

memo

If you used an external microphone to record movie sound in stereo, the sound can be played back in stereo when you use a commercially available HDMI cable to output the movie to an HDMI-compatible AV device. (p.258) If you use an AV cable to output the movie, monaural sound is played back.

Recording Movies

1 Set the mode dial to 🎥.



Live View for movie recording is displayed.

Available operations

Rear e-dial (⟳)	Changes the aperture value when [Movie Aperture Control] is set to [Fixed]. (default setting)
⦿ button	Sets the aperture value to obtain a proper exposure. (default setting) Returns the position of the display area to the center (during enlarged view).
± button + Rear e-dial (⟳)	Performs EV compensation (up to ±2 EV).
INFO button	Enlarges the image. 2, 4, or 6 times original size (when the focus mode is **AF**) 2, 4, 6, 8 or 10 times original size (when the focus mode is **MF**)
Press and hold **OK** button *1	Switches the function of the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to Change AF point or direct key operation.
OK button *1	Returns the position of the AF point to the center (when Change AF point is enabled).

Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Changes the AF point (when Change AF point is enabled). Moves the display area (during enlarged view).

*1 Available only when [Autofocus Method] is [face] or [subject], and the focus mode is **AF.S** or the AF point switching dial is set to **SEL** (Select).

2 Position the subject on the monitor and press the shutter release button halfway.

The autofocus system operates.

When the focus mode is set to **MF**, turn the focusing ring until the subject is clearly visible on the focusing screen.

3 Press the shutter release button fully.

Recording of the movie starts.

4 Press the shutter release button again.

Recording stops.

Caution

- When [Sound] is set to (On), the camera operation sounds are also recorded. When recording a movie, mount the camera onto a tripod and do not operate the camera while recording.
- While recording a movie, the autofocus system does not operate.
- The flash is not available.
- When recording movies using image processing, such as Digital Filter, some frames may be dropped from the recorded movie.
- If the internal temperature of the camera becomes high during movie recording, the recording may be terminated to protect the camera circuitry.

- You can record movies continuously up to 4 GB or 25 minutes. When the SD Memory Card is full, recording stops and the movie is saved.
- Live View images in 🎥 mode are displayed according to the [Live View] settings (p.166) made in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu. However, the Bright/Dark Area warning is not displayed during movie recording.
- You can set the functions for when the front/rear e-dial or the ⊙ button is operated. (p.282)
- If you intend to shoot continuously for a long period, use of the AC adapter kit K-AC50 (optional) is recommended. (p.53)
- You can also use the optional remote control to record a movie. (p.145)
- The sensitivity is fixed to [AUTO].
- If you want to view a movie on an external monitor while recording it, connect the camera to an AV device with the mini HDMI terminal (p.258). You cannot output a movie using the PC/AV terminal while recording.

Playing Back Movies

Recorded movies can be played back in Playback mode in the same manner as saved images.

1 Press the ▶ button.

The camera switches to Playback mode.

2 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to choose a movie to play back.

The first frame of the movie is displayed on the monitor.

3 Press the four-way controller (▲).

Movie playback starts.

Available operations

Four-way controller (▲)	Pauses/Resumes playback.
Rear e-dial (⟳)	Volume control (6 levels)
Four-way controller (▶)	Forwards a frame (during pause).
Press and hold four-way controller (▶)	Fast-forwards playback while pressed.
Four-way controller (◀)	Reverses playback./ Reverses a frame (during pause).
Press and hold four-way controller (◀)	Fast-reverses playback while pressed.
Four-way controller (▼)	Stops playback./ Displays the playback mode palette (when stopped). (p.234)
AE-L button	Saves the displayed image in JPEG format (during pause).

When the movie ends, playback stops and the first frame is displayed again.

- You can use the provided AV cable I-AVC7 or a commercially available HDMI cable to play back the recorded movies on a TV screen or other AV devices. (p.256)
- Even if you used an external microphone to record movie sound in stereo, monaural sound is played back when you output the movie via the PC/AV terminal. When you output the movie via the mini HDMI terminal, sound is played back in stereo.

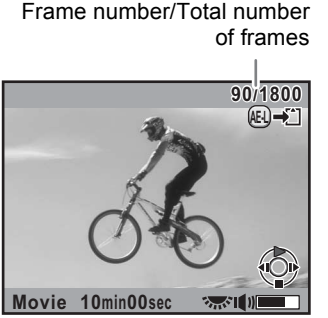
Capturing a Still Picture from a Movie

You can capture a single frame from a movie and save it as a JPEG still picture.

1 Press the four-way controller (▲) in Step 3 on p.177 to pause the movie, and display the frame to save as a still picture.

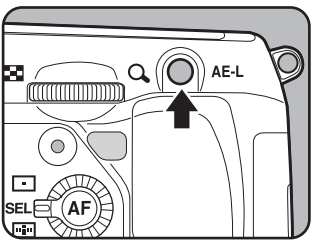
While paused, you can advance the movie in one-frame increments using the four-way controller (◀▶).

The frame number and total number of frames appear at the top right of the screen.



2 Press the AE-L button.

The save confirmation screen appears.



3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.

The captured image is saved as a new image.

Editing Movies

Movies can be divided and unwanted segments can be deleted.

1 Press the ▶ button.

The camera switches to Playback mode.

2 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to choose a movie to play back.

The first frame of the movie is displayed on the monitor.

3 Press the four-way controller (▼).

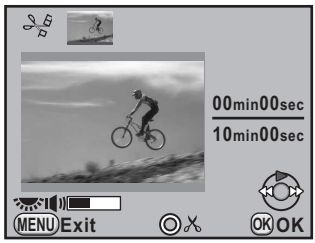
The playback mode palette appears.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select (Movie Editing) and press the OK button.

The movie editing screen appears.

5 Select point(s) where you want to divide the movie.

Up to four points can be selected.

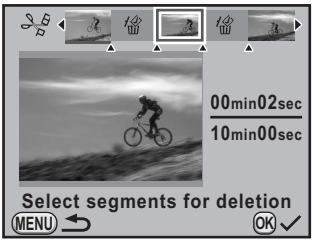


Available operations

Four-way controller (▲)	Plays back/Pauses a movie.
Four-way controller (▶)	Moves forward 1 second (during pause). Moves to the next dividing point (during playback).
Four-way controller (◀)	Moves backward 1 second (during pause). Moves to the previous dividing point (during playback).
Rear e-dial ( )	Volume control (6 levels)
⦿ button	Confirms/cancels a dividing point.

6 Press the 🗑 button to delete unwanted segments.

The screen to select segment(s) to delete is displayed.



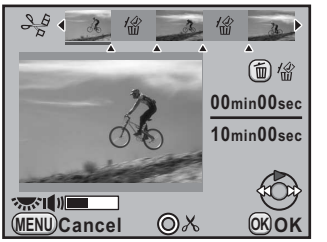
Available operations

Four-way controller (◄►)	Moves the selection frame
OK button	Confirms/cancels a selection of a segment to delete

Press the **MENU** button to exit the screen.

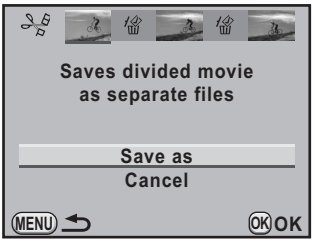
7 Press the OK button.

The save confirmation screen appears.



8 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.

The movie is divided at the specified points and the unwanted segments are deleted from it. And then the divided movie is saved as separate files and displayed on the screen.



Caution

Specify the dividing points in chronological order from the beginning of the movie. When canceling the selected dividing points, cancel each of them in reverse order (from the end of the movie to the beginning). While specifying dividing point(s), you cannot select the frames prior to the last selected frame as a dividing point, or cancel the selections of the dividing point(s).

5 Using the Flash

This chapter provides details on the built-in flash of K-5 and describes how to take pictures with the external flash.

Flash Characteristics in Each Exposure Mode 182

Distance and Aperture when Using the Built-in Flash 185

Lens Compatibility with the Built-in Flash 186

Using an External Flash (Optional) 187

Flash Characteristics in Each Exposure Mode

Using the Flash in Tv (Shutter Priority) Mode

- When taking a moving subject, you can use the flash to change the blur effect.
- Any desired shutter speed of 1/180 sec. or slower can be set for taking a flash photograph.
- The aperture value automatically changes according to the ambient brightness.
- The shutter speed is locked at 1/180 sec. when a lens other than a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA, F or A lens is used.

Using the Flash in Av (Aperture Priority) Mode

- You can set the desired aperture value to take a flash photograph when you want to change the depth of field or shoot a subject farther away.
- The shutter speed automatically changes with the ambient brightness.
- The shutter speed shifts automatically anywhere from 1/180 sec. to a slow shutter speed (p.70) that reduces camera shake. The slowest shutter speed depends on the focal length of the lens in use.
- The shutter speed is locked at 1/180 sec. when a lens other than a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA or F lens is used.

Using the Slow-speed Sync

You can use slow-speed-sync in **Tv** (Shutter Priority) mode when shooting portraits with the sunset in the background. Both the portrait and the background are captured beautifully.

memo

- Slow-speed Sync slows the shutter speed. Use the Shake Reduction function or turn off the Shake Reduction function and use a tripod to avoid camera shake. The picture will also blur if the subject moves.
- Slow-speed Sync shooting can also be performed with an external flash.

Using P/Sv/Av Mode

1 **Set the mode dial to P, Sv or Av.**

2 **Press the ⚡ button.**

The built-in flash pops up.

3 **Press the four-way controller (▼).**

The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

4 **Select SLOW⚡ or SLOW⚡ and press the OK button.**

The shutter speed is set slower to give a proper exposure for the background.

5 **Take a picture.**

Using Tv/TAv/M Mode

1 **Set the mode dial to Tv, TAv or M.**

2 **Press the four-way controller (▼).**

The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

3 **Select ⚡ or ⚡◉ and press the OK button.**

4 **Set the shutter speed (for Tv mode) or shutter speed and aperture value (for TAv or M mode).**

Set so a proper exposure is obtained at a shutter speed of 1/180 second or slower.

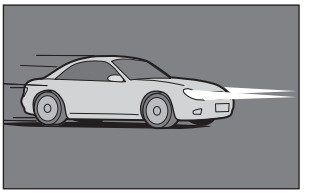
5 **Press the ⚡ button.**

The built-in flash pops up.

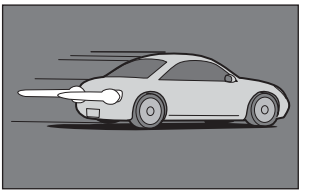
6 **Take a picture.**

Using the Trailing Curtain Sync

Trailing Curtain Sync discharges the flash immediately before the shutter curtain closes. When shooting moving objects with a slow shutter speed, Trailing Curtain Sync and Slow-speed Sync produce different effects depending on when the flash is discharged.
For example, when shooting a moving car with Trailing Curtain Sync, trailing light is captured while the shutter is open and the flash captures the car immediately before the shutter is closed. Therefore, the picture will include a sharp, well-lit car with trailing light behind it.



Slow-speed Sync
(Leading Curtain Sync)



Trailing Curtain Sync

1 Set the mode dial to any mode other than ■, X or 🎥.

2 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

3 Select SLOW ↯ or ↯ and press the OK button.

4 Press the ↯ button.

The built-in flash pops up.

5 Take a picture.

memo Trailing Curtain Sync slows the shutter speed. Use the Shake Reduction function or turn off the Shake Reduction function and use a tripod to avoid camera shake.

Distance and Aperture when Using the Built-in Flash

Relationships between the guide number, aperture and distance must be considered when shooting with the flash to obtain a correct exposure. Calculate and adjust the shooting conditions if the flash output is not sufficient.

Sensitivity	Built-in Flash Guide Number	Sensitivity	Built-in flash guide number
ISO 100	Approx. 13	ISO 3200	Approx. 73.5
ISO 200	Approx. 18.4	ISO 6400	Approx. 104
ISO 400	Approx. 26	ISO 12800	Approx. 147
ISO 800	Approx. 36.8	ISO 25600 *1	Approx. 208
ISO 1600	Approx. 52	ISO 51200 *1	Approx. 294

*1 This can be used when [3. Expanded Sensitivity] in the [**C** Custom Setting 1] menu is set to [On].

Calculating Shooting Distance from Aperture Value

The following equation calculates the distance of the flash for aperture values.

Maximum flash distance L1 = Guide number ÷ Aperture value
Minimum flash distance L2 = Maximum flash distance ÷ 5 *

* The value 5 used in the formula above is a fixed value which applies only when using the built-in flash alone.

Example: When the sensitivity is ISO 100 and the aperture value is F2.8

L1 = 13 ÷ 2.8 = approx. 4.6 (m)

L2 = 4.6 ÷ 5 = approx. 0.9 (m)

Therefore, the flash can be used in a range of about 0.9 m to 4.6 m. However, the built-in flash in this camera cannot be used when the distance is 0.7 m or less. When the flash is used at closer than 0.7 m, it causes vignetting in the picture corners, light is distributed unevenly and a picture may be overexposed.

Calculating Aperture Value from Shooting Distance

The following equation calculates the aperture value for shooting distances.

Aperture value F = Guide number ÷ Shooting distance

Example: When the sensitivity is ISO 100 and shooting distance is 4 m, the aperture value is:

F = 13 ÷ 4 = 3.25

If the resulting number (3.25, in the above example) is not available as a lens aperture, the smaller number that is closest (2.8, in the above example) is generally used.

Lens Compatibility with the Built-in Flash

Depending on the lens used with the K-5, even if a lens without a hood is attached, the use of the built-in flash may not be available or may be limited due to vignetting.
DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, and FA lenses not listed below can be used without problems.

* The following lenses were evaluated without a hood.

Unavailable due to vignetting

Lens Name
DA FISH-EYE 10-17mm F3.5-4.5ED (IF)
DA12-24mm F4ED AL
DA14mm F2.8ED (IF)
FA★ 300mm F2.8ED (IF)
FA★ 600mm F4ED (IF)
FA★ 250-600mm F5.6ED (IF)

Available depending on other factors

Lens Name	Restrictions
F FISH-EYE 17-28mm F3.5-4.5	Vignetting may occur if the focal length is less than 20 mm.
DA16-45mm F4ED AL	When the focal length is less than 28 mm or when the focal length is 28 mm and the shooting distance is 1 m or less, vignetting may occur.
DA★16-50mm F2.8ED AL (IF) SDM	When the focal length is 20 mm or less or when the focal length is 35 mm and the shooting distance is less than 1.5 m, vignetting may occur.
DA17-70mm F4AL (IF) SDM	When the focal length is less than 24 mm or when the focal length is 24 mm and the shooting distance is 1 m or less, vignetting may occur.
DA18-250mm F3.5-6.3ED AL (IF)	Vignetting may occur if the focal length is less than 35 mm.
FA★28-70mm F2.8AL	Vignetting may occur if the focal length is 28 mm and the shooting distance is less than 1 m.
FA SOFT 28mm F2.8	Built-in flash always discharges fully.
FA SOFT 85mm F2.8	Built-in flash always discharges fully.

Using an External Flash (Optional)

Using an optional external flash AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ, AF200FG or AF160FC enables a variety of flash modes, such as P-TTL auto flash mode, depending on the external flash being used. See the chart below for details.

(✔: Available #: Restricted ×: Not available)

Camera Function \ Flash	Built-in Flash	AF540FGZ AF360FGZ	AF200FG AF160FC
Red-eye reduction flash	✔	✔	✔
Auto flash discharge	✔	✔	✔
After the flash is charged, the camera automatically switches to the flash sync speed.	✔	✔	✔
Aperture value is automatically set in **P** mode and **Tv** mode.	✔	✔	✔
P-TTL auto flash (appropriate sensitivity: ISO 100 to 3200)	✔*1	✔*1	✔*1
Slow-speed Sync	✔	✔	✔
Flash exposure compensation	✔	✔	✔
AF assist light of external flash	×	✔	×
Trailing Curtain Sync *2	✔	✔	×
Contrast-control-sync flash mode	#*3	✔	#*4
Slave flash	×	✔	×
High-speed flash sync	×	✔	×
Wireless flash	#*4	✔*5	×

*1 Available only when using a DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA, F or A lens.

*2 Shutter speed of 1/90 sec. or slower.

*3 When combined with the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ, 1/3 of the flash discharge can be output by the built-in flash and 2/3 can be output by the external flash.

*4 Available only when combined with the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ.

*5 Multiple AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ units, or a combination of an AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ unit and the built-in flash is required.

Caution

Flashes with reversed polarity (the center contact on the hot shoe is minus) cannot be used due to the risk of damaging the camera and flash.

About the Display Panel for AF360FGZ

The AF360FGZ itself does not have the function to set the FORMAT size to [DIGITAL]. However, when it is used with a SLR Digital Camera, the difference in focal length between a 35 mm camera and the K-5 is automatically calculated based on the difference in angle of view and is displayed on the panel (when using DA, DA L, D FA, FA J, FA or F lens). The conversion indicator appears and the FORMAT size indicator disappears when the exposure metering timer of the K-5 is on (it returns to 35 mm format display when the exposure metering timer is turned off).

Lens Focal Length	85mm /77mm	50mm	35mm	28mm /24mm	20mm	18mm
Exposure metering timer Off	85mm	70mm	50mm	35mm	28mm	24mm*
Exposure metering timer On	58mm	48mm	34mm	24mm	19mm	16mm*

* Using wide-angle panel

Using P-TTL Auto Mode

You can use [P-TTL Auto] with the AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ, AF200FG or AF160FC flash unit. The flash pre-flashes before the actual flash and confirms the subject (the distance, brightness, contrast, whether it is backlit, etc.) using the camera 77-segment metering sensor. The flash output for the actual flash is adjusted based on the information obtained from the pre-flash, enabling flash photography with more accurate exposure for the subject than with normal TTL auto.

1 **Remove the cover of the hot shoe and attach the external flash.**

2 **Turn on the camera and the external flash.**

3 **Set the external flash mode to [P-TTL Auto].**

4 **Confirm that the external flash is fully charged and then take a picture.**

- P-TTL Auto is only available with an AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ, AF200FG or AF160FC flash unit.
- The ⚡ will light in the viewfinder when the flash is ready (fully charged).
- For details such as operation method and effective distance, please refer to the external flash manual.
- The flash does not discharge if the subject is bright enough when the flash mode is ⚡ᴬ or ⚡◉. Therefore, it may not be suitable for Daylight-Sync shooting.
- Never press the ⚡ button when any external flash unit is attached to the camera. The built-in flash will hit the external flash. If you want to use both at once, set the wireless mode or connect them using the extension cord. (p.194)

Using High-Speed Flash Sync Mode

With the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ, you can discharge the flash to take a picture at a shutter speed faster than 1/180 second.

1 Remove the cover of the hot shoe and attach the external flash (AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ) to the camera.

2 Set the exposure mode to Tv or M.

3 Turn on the camera and the external flash.

4 Set the external flash sync mode to HS ⚡ (High-speed flash sync).

5 Confirm that the external flash is fully charged and then take a picture.

- The ⚡ will light in the viewfinder when the flash is ready (fully charged).
- High-speed flash sync is available only when the shutter speed is set faster than 1/180 sec.
- High-speed flash sync is not available when the exposure mode is set to **B** (Bulb).

Using Flash in Wireless Mode

By using two external flashes (AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ) or using the built-in flash with one or more external flashes, you can shoot in P-TTL flash mode without connecting the flash units with a cord.

- Set the power switch of the external flash to WIRELESS.
- Two or more AF540FGZ/AF360FGZ external flashes are required to use high-speed flash sync in wireless mode. This function cannot be used in combination with the built-in flash.
- Set the wireless mode of the external flash not directly connected to the camera to SLAVE.

Setting the Channel for the External Flash

First, set the channel for the external flash unit.

1 Set the channel for the external flash unit.

2 Remove the cover of the hot shoe and attach the external flash.

3 Turn on the camera and the external flash, and press the shutter release button halfway.

The built-in flash is set to the same channel as the external flash unit.

- When set to ^{W}ϟ mode, the channel currently set for the built-in flash is displayed in the viewfinder for 10 seconds.
- Be sure to set all the flashes to the same channel. Refer to the manual of the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ for details on how to set the channel on the external flash.

Using the Built-in Flash in Wireless Mode

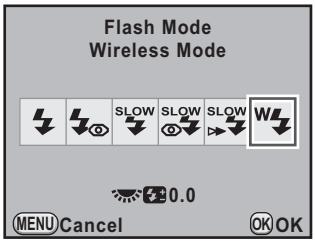
Set the camera to wireless flash mode when using an external flash in combination with the built-in flash.

1 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The [Flash Mode] screen appears.

2 Select ^{W} and press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.
The channel for the built-in flash is displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel. The factory default setting is CH1.



- ^{W} cannot be set when the exposure mode is set to ■ (Green).
- When the drive mode is set to (Remote Control (3s delay)), **M.UP** (Mirror Lock-up) or (Mirror Lock-up remote control), or the lens aperture is not set to the **A** position, ^{W} cannot be selected.

Changing the Built-in Flash Discharge Method

You can change the built-in flash discharge method used in wireless mode.
Set in [21. Flash in Wireless Mode] of the [**C** Custom Setting 3] menu (p.92).

1	On	Discharges the built-in flash as a master. (default setting)
2	Off	Discharges the built-in flash as a control flash.

HS (High-speed flash sync) is not available with the built-in flash.

Wireless Shooting

● **Using a Combination of the Built-in Flash and an External Flash Unit**

1 **Remove the external flash unit after the channel is set on the camera, and place it at the desired location.**

2 **Set the camera flash to ^{W}ϟ mode, and press the ϟ button.**

3 **Confirm that both flashes are fully charged and then take a picture.**

● **Using a Combination of External Flash Units**

1 **Set the wireless mode of the external flash directly connected to the camera to [MASTER] or [CONTROL].**

MASTER	Sets the camera to discharge both the flash directly connected to the camera and the wireless flash unit.
CONTROL	Sets the camera to discharge the flash directly connected to the camera as a control flash only, not as the main flash.

2 **On the wireless remote flash unit, set the wireless flash mode to [SLAVE] and set the channel to the same channel as the flash directly connected to the camera. Then, place it at the desired location.**

3 **Confirm that both flashes are fully charged and then take a picture.**

memo

- The Shake Reduction function is automatically turned off in wireless mode.
- When using multiple AF540FGZ/AF360FGZ external flashes and performing high-speed flash sync shooting in wireless mode, set the flash directly connected to the camera to high-speed flash sync mode.

Wireless Flash Control (P-TTL Flash Mode)

When using external flash units (AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ) for wireless shooting, the following information is exchanged between the flash units before the flash is discharged.

Press the shutter release button fully.

↓

1 The flash directly connected to the camera emits a control flash (relays the flash mode of the camera).
2 The wireless remote flash emits a test flash (relays confirmation of subject).
3 The flash directly connected to the camera emits a control flash (relays flash output to the wireless remote flash).
   * The flash directly connected to the camera will emit a control flash one more time after this to relay the flash duration time when HS ϟ (High-speed flash sync) is set.
4 The wireless remote flash discharges.

memo When the wireless mode of the external flash directly connected to the camera is set to [MASTER] or [21. Flash in Wireless Mode] (p.191) is set to [On] for the built-in flash, all the flashes will discharge simultaneously.

Red-Eye Reduction

As with the built-in flash, the red-eye reduction function is available with an external flash. However, this function may not be available on some flashes or may have restrictions for usage conditions. Refer to the chart on p.187.

memo
- The red-eye reduction function works by discharging the flash twice even when only an external flash is used. (p.80)
- If the red-eye reduction function of the built-in flash is used when the external flash is set as the slave unit or with the wireless function, the pre-flash for red-eye reduction will trigger the external flash. Do not use the red-eye reduction function when using a slave unit.

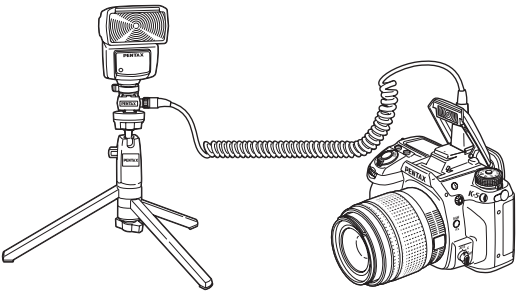
Trailing Curtain Sync

When using the built-in flash with an external flash (AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ) that is set to the Trailing Curtain Sync mode, the built-in flash will also use this mode. Confirm that both flash units are fully charged before shooting.

Connecting an External Flash with an Extension Cord

When using the built-in flash with an external flash that does not have a wireless flash mode function such as AF200FG, attach the Hot Shoe Adapter FG (optional) to the camera hot shoe and an Off-Camera Shoe Adapter F (optional) to the bottom of the external flash, and connect these with the Extension Cord F5P (optional) as shown in the illustration below. The Off-Camera Shoe Adapter F can be mounted to your tripod using the tripod screw.
Only a P-TTL auto flash can be used in combination with the built-in flash.

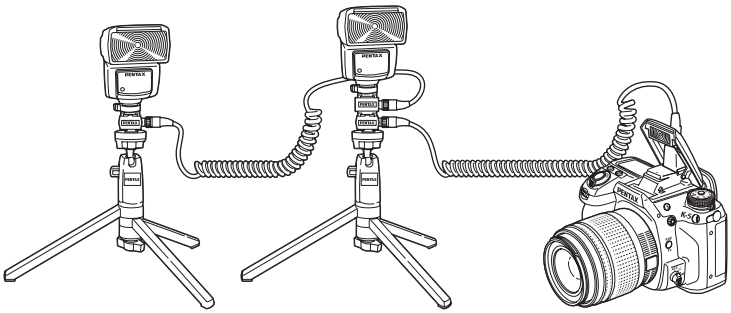
When combining with the built-in flash



Multiple Flash Shooting Using Extension Cords

You can combine two or more external flashes (AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ or AF200FG) or you can use two or more external flashes in combination with the built-in flash. You can use the extension cord connection terminal on the flash to connect the AF540FGZ. You can connect AF360FGZ or AF200FG units as shown in the illustration below. Connect an external flash and the Hot Shoe Adapter F (optional) to the Off-Camera Shoe Adapter F (optional) and then connect another Off-Camera Shoe Adapter F with external flash using the Extension Cord F5P (optional).
Refer to the manual of the flash for details.

When combining two or more external flashes



Caution
- Do not combine with accessories that have a different number of contacts, such as a Hot Shoe Grip, as a malfunction may occur.
- Combining with flashes from other manufacturers may cause equipment breakdown. We recommend using the AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ or AF200FG.

memo
When using multiple external flashes or using an external flash with the built-in flash, P-TTL is used for flash control.

Contrast-Control-Sync Flash

Combining two or more external flashes (AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ or AF200FG) or using an external flash in combination with the built-in flash allows multiple flash photography (contrast-control-sync flash photography). This is based on the difference between the amounts of light discharged from multiple units.

Caution

- The AF200FG must be combined with the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ.
- Do not combine with accessories that have a different number of contacts, such as a Hot Shoe Grip, as a malfunction may occur.
- Combining with flashes from other manufacturers may cause equipment breakdown. We recommend using the AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ or AF200FG.

1 Connect the external flash to the camera indirectly.

Refer to p.194 for details.

2 Set the sync mode for the external flash to contrast-control-sync mode.

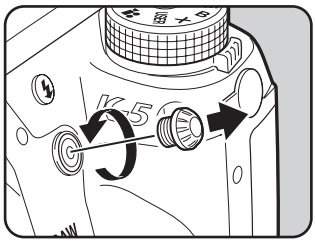
3 Confirm that both the external flash and built-in flash are fully charged and then take a picture.

memo

- When using two or more external flashes and the contrast-control-sync mode is set on the external master flash unit, the flash output ratio is 2 (master unit) : 1 (slave units). When an external flash is used in combination with the built-in flash, the flash output ratio is 2 (external flash) : 1 (built-in flash).
- When using multiple external flashes or using an external flash with the built-in flash, P-TTL is used for flash control.

X-sync Socket

You can connect an external flash to the camera with a sync cord by using the X-sync socket.
Remove the Sync socket 2P cap and connect a sync cord to the X-sync socket.



Caution

- The use of high-voltage or high-current external flashes may cause a camera breakdown.
- Flashes with reversed polarity (the center of the sync plug is minus) cannot be used due to the risk of damaging the camera and flash.
- When a sync cord is connected to the X-sync socket, linked functions will not work.
- To prevent vignetting caused from Trailing Curtain Sync, it is recommended to take a test shot using a shutter speed one level slower than the flash sync speed.
- The contact of the X-sync socket is not dust-proof and water-resistant. Attach the provided Sync socket 2P cap when not in use.

Memo

6 Shooting Settings

This chapter describes how to set the save format for pictures taken and other settings.

Setting a File Format 200
Setting the White Balance 205
Correcting Images 214
Setting the Image Finishing Tone 222
Storing Frequently Used Settings 227

Setting the JPEG Recorded Pixels

You can select the number of recorded pixels from 16M, 10M, 6M and 2M. The more pixels there are, the larger the picture and the bigger the file size. The file size will also vary according to the [JPEG Quality] setting. The default setting is 16M.

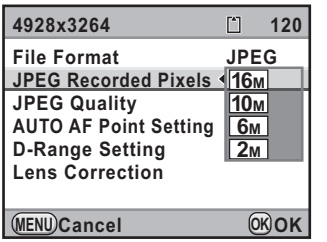
Recorded Pixels	Pixels	Paper Size
16M	4928×3264	14"×17" / A2 paper
10M	3936×2624	10"×12" / A3 paper
6M	3072×2048	8"×10" / A4 paper
2M	1728×1152	5"×7" / A5 paper

The paper sizes above are references for optimal printing by recorded pixels. The quality of the captured photo or printed picture depends on the quality level, exposure control, resolution of the printer and a variety of other factors.

1 Select [JPEG Recorded Pixels] in the [Rec. Mode 1] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the number of recorded pixels and press the OK button.

When the number of recorded pixels is changed, the number of pixels appears at the top left of the screen and the number of recordable images for that setting appears at the top right of the screen.



3 Press the MENU button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

Setting the JPEG Quality Level

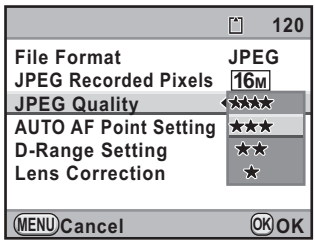
You can set the image quality level (compression ratio). The file size will also vary according to the [JPEG Recorded Pixels] setting. The default setting is ★★★ (Best).

★★★★ Premium	Images will be clearer but file size will be larger.
★★★ Best	
★★ Better	
★ Good	Images will be grainier but file size will be smaller.

1 Select [JPEG Quality] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 1] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a quality level and press the OK button.

When the quality level is changed, the number of recordable images at that quality level appears at the top right of the screen.



3 Press the MENU button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

Setting a File Format

You can set the format of image files.

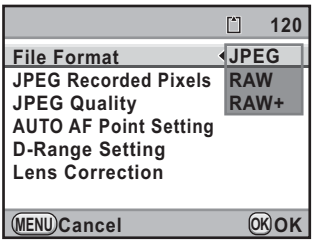
JPEG	Captures images in JPEG format. (default setting) You can change the number of recorded pixels in [JPEG Recorded Pixels] and the image quality level in [JPEG Quality].
RAW	RAW format is a CMOS sensor output format saved without processing. Effects of White Balance, Custom Image and Color Space are not applied to the captured images, but they are saved as actual original information. When you perform the development process by using RAW Development function (p.271), or using the provided software (PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4) after transferring RAW data to a computer, you can create JPEG images with these effects.
RAW+	Images are saved in both RAW and JPEG formats. When [One Push File Format] is assigned to the **RAW**/**Fx** button, you can press the **RAW**/**Fx** button to temporarily change the file format and save an image in both file formats. (p.203)

Caution When Extended Bracketing, Digital Filter, HDR Capture or Cross Processing is set, the file format is set to [JPEG] and cannot be changed. To change the file format, turn these functions off.

1 Select [File Format] in the [Rec. Mode 1] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a file format.

When the file format is changed, the number of recordable images appears at the top right of the screen.



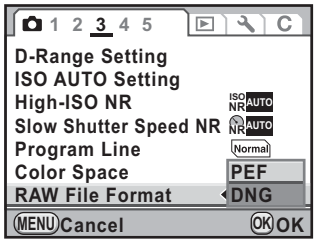
3 Press the OK button.

4 Press the MENU button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

Setting the RAW File Format

You can select PEF or DNG format in [RAW File Format] of the [📷 Rec. Mode 3] menu (p.90) when capturing images in RAW format.



PEF	PENTAX's original RAW file format (default setting)
DNG	General-purpose, publicly available RAW file format designed by Adobe Systems

Temporarily Changing the File Format using the RAW/Fx Button

When [One Push File Format] is assigned to the **RAW/Fx** button, you can temporarily change the file format.

1 Select [Button Customization] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

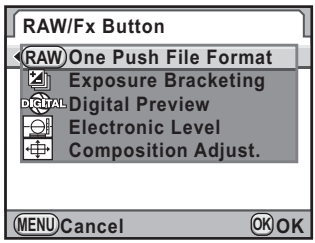
The [Button Customization] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [RAW/Fx Button] and press the four-way controller (▶).

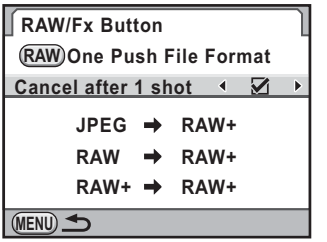
The [**RAW/Fx** Button] screen appears.

3 Press the four-way controller (▶).

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [One Push File Format] and press the OK button.



5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Cancel after 1 shot] and use the four-way controller (◄►) to select ☑ or □.

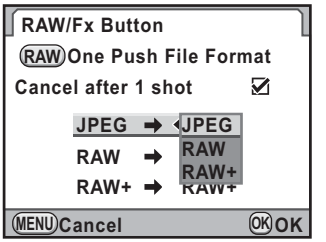


☑	The recording format returns to the original file format after a picture is taken. (default setting)
□	The setting is canceled when the following operations are performed. - the **RAW**/**Fx** button is pressed again - the ▶ button or **MENU** button is pressed - the main switch is turned off - the mode dial is turned

6 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to choose a file format.

The left side is the [File Format] setting and the right side is the file format when the **RAW**/**Fx** button is pressed.

7 Press the four-way controller (►), and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a file format when the RAW/Fx button is pressed.



8 Press the OK button.

9 Press the MENU button three times.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Setting the White Balance

White balance is a function for adjusting the color of an image so that white objects appear white. Set the white balance if you are not satisfied with the color balance of pictures taken with white balance set to **AWB** (Auto), or to intentionally apply a creative effect to your images.

Item		Setting	Color Temperature *1
AWB	Auto	Automatically adjusts the white balance. (default setting)	Approx. 4,000 to 8,000K
☼	Daylight	For use when taking pictures in sunlight.	Approx. 5,200K
	Shade	For use when taking pictures in the shade. It reduces the bluish color tones in a picture.	Approx. 8,000K
	Cloudy	For use when taking pictures on cloudy days.	Approx. 6,000K
	Fluorescent Light	For use when taking pictures under fluorescent lighting. Select the type of fluorescent light. **D** Fluorescent Light Daylight Color **N** Fluorescent Light Daylight White **W** Fluorescent Light Cool White **L** Fluorescent Light Warm White	 Approx. 6,500K Approx. 5,000K Approx. 4,200K Approx. 3,000K
	Tungsten Light	For use when taking pictures under light bulbs or other tungsten light. It reduces the reddish color tones in a picture.	Approx. 2,850K
WB	Flash	For use when taking pictures using the built-in flash.	Approx. 5,400K
CTE	*2	Use this to keep and strengthen the color tone of the light source in the image.	-
	Manual 1-3	Use this to manually adjust the white balance according to the lighting so that white objects appear as a natural white. You can save three settings.	-
K	Color Temperature 1~3	Use figures to set the color temperature. You can save three settings.	-

*1 The color temperatures (K) shown above are all estimates. These do not indicate precise colors.

*2 CTE = Color Temperature Enhancement

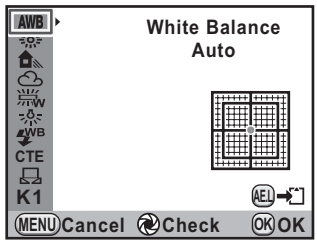
Caution White balance is fixed to **AWB** when Cross Processing is set.

1 Press the four-way controller (◄) in Capture mode.

The [White Balance] screen appears.

After the power is turned on, the last image taken is displayed in the background.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the white balance.



Available operations

Main switch (⟲)	Uses Digital Preview to preview the background image with the setting applied.
AE-L button	Saves the background image. Select [Save as] and press the **OK** button.

3 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

memo

- The camera automatically performs fine-tuning even when the light source is specified. The color temperature of the light source is fixed when [10. WB Adjustable Range] is set to [Fixed] in the [**C** Custom Setting 2] menu (p.91).
- Because the light source changes when a flash discharges, you can set the white balance for when the flash discharges. Select [Auto White Balance], [Unchanged] or [Flash] in [11. WB When Using Flash] of the [**C** Custom Setting 2] menu (p.91).

Fine-tuning the White Balance

You can fine-tune the white balance setting.

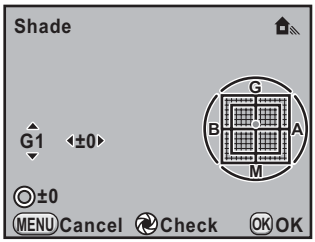
1 Perform the desired settings in Step 2 on p.206.

2 Press the four-way controller (▶).

The fine-tuning screen appears.

3 Fine-tune the white balance.

Seven levels (225 patterns) are available on the G-M and B-A axes.



Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼)	Adjusts the tone of the colors between green (G) and magenta (M).
Four-way controller (◀▶)	Adjusts the tone of the colors between blue (B) and amber (A).
⦿ button	Resets the adjustment value.

4 Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the [White Balance] screen.

5 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

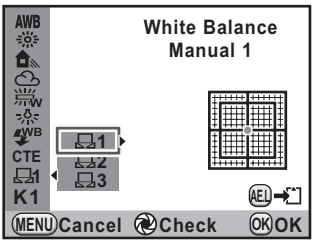
memo When set to 🖧, the white balance can also be measured by pressing the shutter release button fully (except while recording a movie).

Adjusting the White Balance Manually

You can adjust the white balance depending on the light source when taking pictures. With the manual white balance, the camera can store delicate shades that cannot be precisely adjusted with the white balance preset values provided in the camera. This provides the optimum white balance for your surroundings. Up to three settings can be saved.

1 **Select 🖵 in Step 2 on p.206 and press the four-way controller (▶).**

2 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select 🖵1 to 🖵3 and press the four-way controller (▶).**

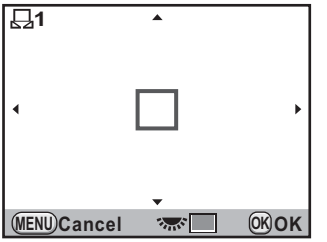


3 **Under the light to measure the white balance, fully display a white sheet of paper in the viewfinder or select a white area as the subject.**

4 **Press the shutter release button fully.**

Set the focus mode to **MF** when the shutter cannot be released.
The screen to select the measuring range is displayed.

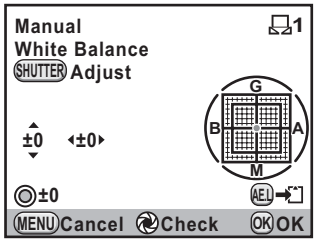
5 **Use the rear e-dial (🔄) to select the entire screen or spot area for the measuring range.**



6 When a spot area is selected, use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to move the frame to the position you want to measure.

7 Press the OK button.

The white balance fine-tuning screen appears when measuring is completed. Adjust the white balance as necessary. (p.207)



8 Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the [White Balance] screen.

9 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

memo

- No image is recorded when the shutter release button is pressed to adjust the white balance.
- The message [The operation could not be completed correctly] appears when measuring is unsuccessful. Press the **OK** button while displayed to remeasure the white balance.
- If a picture is extremely overexposed or underexposed, the white balance may not be adjusted. In this case, adjust exposure to the correct amount level before adjusting the white balance.
- When the mode dial is set to 🎥 (Movie), the white balance cannot be measured. Adjust the white balance in any exposure mode other than 🎥 before recording a movie.

Adjusting the White Balance with Color Temperature

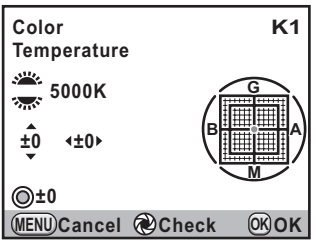
Use figures to set the color temperature. Up to three settings can be saved.

1 Select K in Step 2 on p.206 and press the four-way controller (▶).

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select K1 to K3 and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Color Temperature] screen appears.

3 Adjust the color temperature with the front or rear e-dial.



Color temperature steps vary depending on the e-dial.

E-dial	Kelvin	Mired *1
Front ( )	1 Step (100K)	1 Step (20M)
Rear ( )	10 Steps (1,000K)	5 Steps (100M)

*1 The default setting for Color Temperature step units is [Kelvin]. You can change the step units to [Mired] in [13. Color Temperature Steps] of the [**C** Custom Setting 2] menu (p.91). However, figures are converted to Kelvin and displayed.

You can also use the steps in “Fine-tuning the White Balance” (p.207) for fine-tuning.

4 Press the OK button.

The settings are saved and the camera returns to the [White Balance] screen.

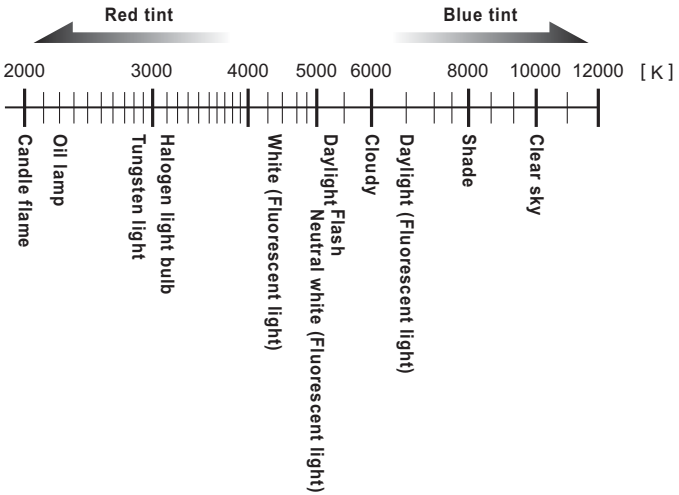
Turn the main switch to ⟳ to display Digital Preview with the set color temperature.

5 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

Color Temperature

The color of light shifts towards blue as the color temperature rises, and towards red as the color temperature falls. Color temperature describes this change in light color in terms of absolute temperature (K: Kelvin). This camera is capable of setting the white balance to enable taking pictures with natural coloring under a variety of lighting conditions.

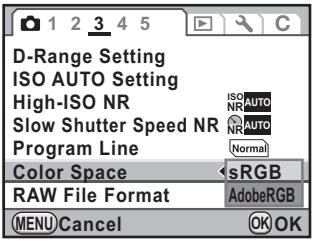


Setting the Color Space

You can select a color space to use.

sRGB	Sets to sRGB color space. (default setting)
AdobeRGB	Sets to AdobeRGB color space.

Set in [Color Space] of the [Rec. Mode 3] menu (p.90).



memo

The file naming system changes depending on the color space setting as shown below.

For sRGB: IMGPxxxx.JPG

For AdobeRGB: _IGPxxxx.JPG

"xxxx" indicates the file number. This is displayed as a four-digit sequential number. (p.301)

Color Space

Color ranges for various input/output devices, such as digital cameras, monitors, and printers, differ. This color range is called the Color Space.

To recreate different color spaces in different devices, standard color spaces have been proposed. This camera supports sRGB and AdobeRGB.

sRGB is mainly used for devices such as a computer.

AdobeRGB covers a wider range of color than sRGB and is used for occupational uses such as industrial printing.

An image created in AdobeRGB may appear lighter than an image created in sRGB when output from an sRGB compatible device.

Saving the White Balance Setting of a Captured Image

You can copy the white balance setting of a captured image and save it as Manual White Balance. Up to three settings can be saved.

Caution

Only the white balance setting of still pictures captured with this camera can be copied. The following images cannot be selected.

- Multi-exposure image
- Index image
- Still pictures captured from a movie

1 In Playback mode, display the image with the white balance setting you want to copy.

2 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The playback mode palette appears.

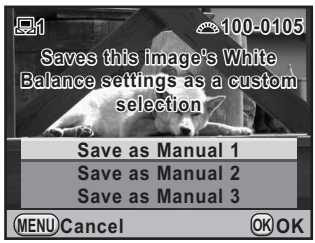
3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select 🖫 (Save as Manual WB) and press the OK button.

The save confirmation screen appears.

You can turn the front e-dial (🔆) to select a different image.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a number and press the OK button.

The white balance setting of the selected image is saved to Manual White Balance and the camera switches to Capture mode. The white balance setting is 🖫 (Manual).



The camera and lens properties can be automatically adjusted for when taking pictures.

Adjusting Brightness

Adjusts the brightness and reduces the occurrence of overexposed and underexposed areas.

D-Range Setting

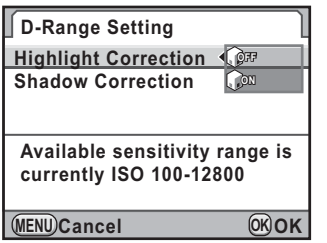
Expands the dynamic range and enables a more ample gradation expression by the CMOS sensor and reduces the occurrence of overexposed and underexposed areas.

1 **Select [D-Range Setting] in the [Rec. Mode 3] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).**

The [D-Range Setting] screen appears.

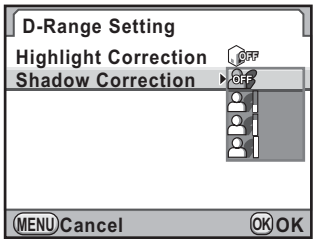
2 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Highlight Correction] and press the four-way controller (▶).**

3 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Off] or [On] and press the OK button.**



4 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Shadow Correction] and press the four-way controller (▶).**

5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Off], [Low], [Medium] or [High] and press the OK button.



6 Press the MENU button twice.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

memo When [Highlight Correction] is set to [On], the minimum sensitivity is set to ISO 200. When [3. Expanded Sensitivity] is set to [On] in the [C Custom Setting 1] menu (p.91), the minimum sensitivity is set to ISO 160.

HDR Capture

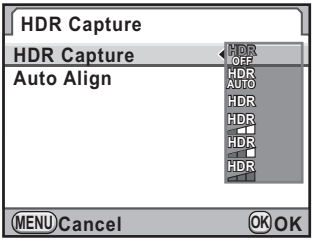
Enables capturing images at high dynamic range. Takes three images (-3EV underexposed, standard (proper exposure) and +3EV overexposed) to create a single composite image with them.

Caution
- HDR Capture is not available in the following situations.
  - when the file format is set to [RAW] or [RAW+] (fixed to [JPEG])
  - when the exposure mode is set to **B** (Bulb) or **X** (Flash X-sync Speed)
- When HDR Capture is set, the following functions are not available.
  - Drive modes other than □ (Single Frame Shooting), ⏲ (Self-timer (12s)), ⏲2s (Self-timer (2s)), (Remote Control) or 3s (Remote Control (3s delay))
  - Interval Shooting or Multi-exposure
  - Extended Bracketing, Digital Filter or Cross Processing (The function selected last is used.)
- During HDR Capture, multiple images are combined together to create a single image, so it will take time to save an image.

1 Select [HDR Capture] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

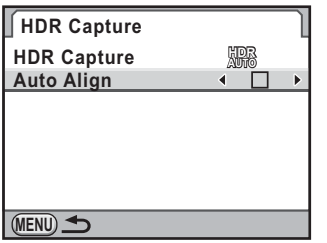
The [HDR Capture] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Off], [Auto], [Standard], [Strong 1], [Strong 2] or [Strong 3].



3 Press the OK button.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Auto Align] and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select □ or ☑.



□	[Shake Reduction] is fixed to (Off). Use a tripod to prevent camera shake when taking pictures. (default setting)
☑	The Shake Reduction function operates according to the Shake Reduction setting at that point. HDR Capture can be used without a tripod. [Program Line] (p.102) is fixed to (Hi-speed Priority) and [AUTO ISO Parameters] (p.97) is fixed to FAST (Fast).

5 Press the MENU button twice.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

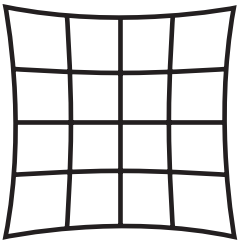
- During HDR Capture, pressing the **MENU** button while an image is being saved cancels the process and saves the image as a standard image.
- When both [Shake Reduction] and [Auto Align] are set to on, be careful of the following points.
  - Make sure to hold the camera firmly so that the composition of the picture does not change while the three images are taken. If there is a great difference of the composition between three images, [Auto Align] may not be possible.
  - Images taken with HDR Capture are susceptible to camera shake and blur. Be sure to set a higher shutter speed and a higher ISO sensitivity.
  - When the exposure mode is set to **P** (Hyper-program), [Program Line] is set to (Hi-speed Priority).
  - When the ISO sensitivity is set to AUTO, the sensitivity can be raised more easily than normal.
  - [Auto Align] may not be possible for lenses that have a focal length exceeding 100 mm.
  - When the entire subject is checkered or has a uniform surface, [Auto Align] may not be possible.

Lens Correction

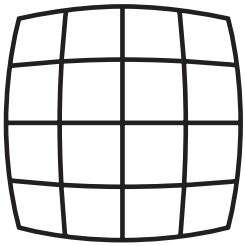
Reduces distortions and lateral chromatic aberrations occurring due to lens properties.

● **Distortion**

Distortion is the phenomenon in which the center of the image appears inflated (barrel distortion) or the center of the image appears pinched (pincushion distortion). Distortion occurs more easily when using a zoom lens or a small diameter lens, and straight walls or the horizon in the image appear curved.



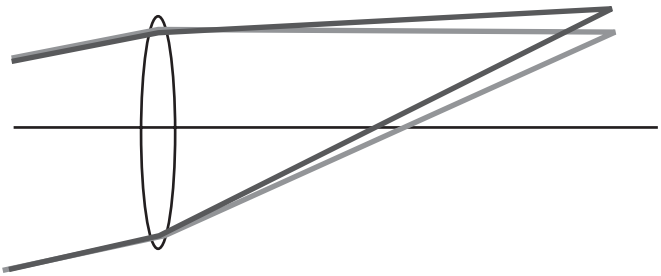
Pincushion distortion



Barrel distortion

● **Lateral chromatic aberration**

Lateral chromatic aberration is the phenomenon in which the magnification of the image varies according to the colors (wavelengths of light) when a picture was taken, and may cause a blurred image. Lateral chromatic aberration occurs more easily at shorter focal lengths.



Caution

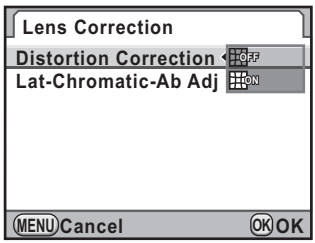
- Corrections can only be made when using DA, DA L, D FA or some FA lenses (p.337). [Lens Correction] cannot be selected when an incompatible lens is attached.
- [Distortion Correction] is disabled when using a DA FISH-EYE 10-17mm.
- The Lens Correction function is disabled when using an accessory such as a close-up ring or rear converter that is attached between the camera and the lens.
- When the Lens Correction function is activated, it may take longer to display Instant Review and the shooting speed for continuous shooting may be slower.
- The effect of the Lens Correction function may be barely noticeable in some cases due to the shooting conditions or other factors.

1 Select [Lens Correction] in the [Rec. Mode 1] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Lens Correction] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Distortion Correction] or [Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj].

3 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [OFF] or [ON].



4 Press the OK button.

5 Press the MENU button twice.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

memo

When a compatible lens is attached and the file format is set to [RAW] or [RAW+], the correction information is saved as a RAW file parameter and you can select [On] or [Off] when developing the RAW images. (p.274)

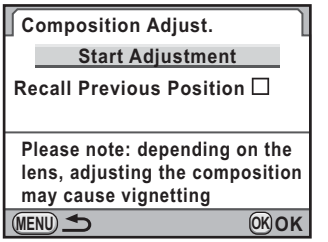
Adjusting the Composition

Adjusts the Shake Reduction unit in the X-Y direction or rotation direction for a better composition position and a more level camera. Use this when you want to adjust the composition, such as when using a tripod.

1 Select [Composition Adjust.] in the [Rec. Mode 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Composition Adjust.] screen appears.

2 Select [Start Adjustment] and press the OK button.

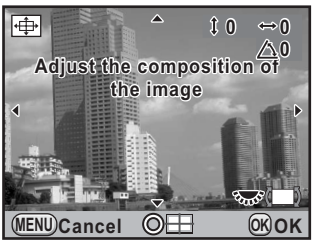


To start adjusting the composition from the previous position, use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Recall Previous Position] and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to switch to ☑.

Live View is displayed and the composition can be adjusted.

3 Adjust the composition.

The amount of compensation (the number of steps) is displayed at the top right of the screen.



Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Moves the composition up, down, left or right. Adjust up to 24 steps (approximately ±1.5 mm) on the image sensor.
Rear e-dial	Adjusts the level of the composition when the amount of adjustment is less than 16 steps (±1.0 mm) up or down, or to the left or right. Up to 8 steps (approximately ±1°) can be adjusted.
⦿ button	Resets the adjustment value.

4 Press the OK button.

The camera returns to normal Live View and is ready to take a picture.

- The saved adjustment value is reset when Live View is ended.
- When using the composition adjustment function frequently, you can assign the function to the **RAW**/**Fx** button. (p.285)

Setting Custom Image

You can set the image finishing tone before shooting. Select from the following nine modes for the image finishing tone: Bright (default setting), Natural, Portrait, Landscape, Vibrant, Muted, Bleach Bypass, Reversal Film and Monochrome. You can adjust the following parameters.

Parameter	Setting	Setting Values
Saturation	Sets the color saturation. • Not available when [Reversal Film] or [Monochrome] is selected.	-4 to +4
Hue	Sets the color. • Not available when [Bleach Bypass], [Reversal Film] or [Monochrome] is selected.	-4 to +4
High/Low Key Adj	Changes the brightness of the image. • Not available when [Reversal Film] is selected.	-4 to +4
Contrast	Sets the image contrast. • Not available when [Reversal Film] is selected.	-4 to +4
Sharpness	Sets the sharpness of the image outlines. You can switch to [Fine Sharpness] or [Extra Sharpness], which makes image outlines even thinner and sharper. (Not available when the exposure mode is set to 🎥 (Movie).)	-4 to +4
Filter Effect	Changes the contrast to appear as if a B&W color filter was used. Set the filter color. • Available only when [Monochrome] is selected.	None/Green/Yellow/ Orange/Red/Magenta/ Blue/Cyan/Infrared Filter
Toning	Sets a color tone for [Bleach Bypass]. Sets the level for cold tone adjustment (- direction) and warm tone adjustment (+ direction) for [Monochrome]. • Available only when [Bleach Bypass] or [Monochrome] is selected.	Bleach Bypass: Off/ Green/Yellow/Orange/ Red/Magenta/Purple/ Blue/Cyan Monochrome: -4 to +4

Caution

Image finishing tone is fixed to [Bright] and the parameters cannot be changed in the following conditions.

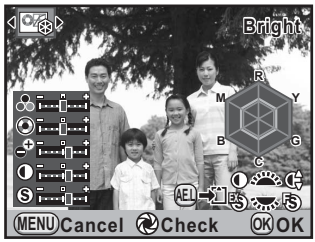
- when the exposure mode is set to ■ (Green)
- when Cross Processing is set

1 Press the four-way controller (▶) in Capture mode.

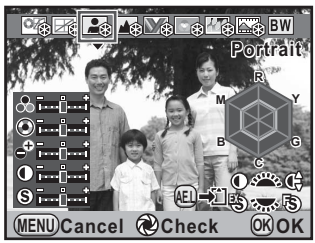
The screen to select a custom image appears.

After the power is turned on, the last image taken is displayed in the background.

2 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select an image finishing tone.



3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to choose a parameter you want to change.



4 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to change the setting.

The background image changes according to the settings.

You can visually check the saturation and hue with the radar chart.

Available operations

Front e-dial ( )	Switches between enabling and disabling contrast settings.
Rear e-dial ( )	Switches between [Sharpness], [Fine Sharpness] and [Extra Sharpness]. When set to [Fine Sharpness] or [Extra Sharpness], image outlines can be captured with more detail.
⊙ button	Resets the set value.
Main switch (↻)	Uses Digital Preview to preview the background image with the setting applied. (Not available during Live View.)
AE-L button	Saves the background image. Select [Save as] and press the **OK** button. (Not available during Live View.)

5 Press the OK button.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

Setting Cross Processing

Cross processing is the procedure of deliberately processing a film in the wrong type of chemicals to create an image with different colors and contrast. This camera features digital cross processing, which is done internally.

Caution

- When Cross Processing is set, the file format is fixed to [JPEG] and cannot be changed. You cannot use Cross Processing when the file format is set to [RAW] or [RAW+].
- When Cross Processing is set, the following functions and operation are not available.
  - Multi-exposure
  - Extended Bracketing or HDR Capture (The function selected last is used.)
  - Changing the settings of White Balance and Custom Image

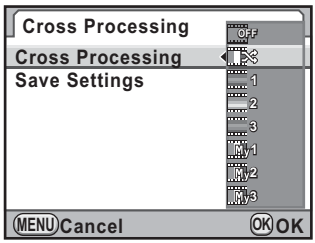
1 Select [Cross Processing] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

When the exposure mode is set to 🎥 (Movie), select from [Movie] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu. (p.171)

The [Cross Processing] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select an item and press the OK button.

Select from [Off], [Preset 1-3], [Random] and [Favorite 1-3].



3 Press the MENU button twice.

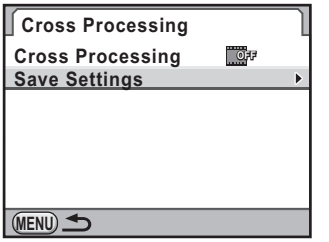
The camera is ready to take a picture.

Saving the Cross Processing Setting of a Captured Image

The outcome of cross processing varies each time a picture is taken. If you are able to take a cross processed image that you like, you can save the Cross Processing settings used in that image. A total of 3 Cross Processing settings can be saved for still pictures and movies.

memo To save Cross Processing setting for movies, set from [Movie] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu with the mode dial set to 🎥 (Movie).

1 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save Settings] in Step 2 on p.225 and press the four-way controller (▶).



The camera will search for cross processed images starting from the most recent image taken. (An hourglass icon is displayed while searching.) When a cross processed image is found, the screen to save the settings appears.

If there are no cross processed images, the message [No cross processed image] appears.

2 Turn the front e-dial (🌞) to select a cross processed image.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as Favorite 1], [Save as Favorite 2] or [Save as Favorite 3] and press the OK button.

The setting of the selected image is saved to [Favorite 1 - 3].

4 Press the MENU button twice to finish saving.

Storing Frequently Used Settings

You can save the current camera settings in the **USER** mode and easily retrieve them.
The following settings can be stored.

- Exposure Mode (other than ■ and 🎥)
- Drive Mode
- Flash Mode/Flash Exposure Compensation
- White Balance
- Sensitivity/ISO AUTO Setting
- EV compensation value
- Program Line
- Exposure Bracketing
- Extended Bracketing (Bracketing Amount/Type)
- JPEG Recorded Pixels
- JPEG Quality
- File Format
- RAW File Format
- AUTO AF Point Setting
- High-ISO NR
- Slow Shutter Speed NR
- D-Range Setting
- HDR Capture
- Custom Image
- Cross Processing
- Digital Filter
- Shake Reduction/ Horizon Correction
- Lens Correction
- Color Space
- E-Dial Programming/ Button Customization
- [**C** Custom Setting 1-4] menu settings

Caution The **USER** mode cannot be set when the mode dial is set to ■ (Green) or 🎥 (Movie) mode.

Saving the Settings

Saves the settings to **USER**. Up to five different settings can be saved.

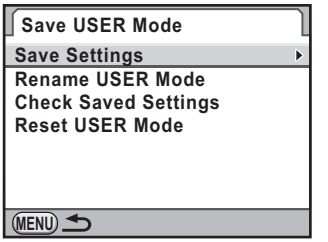
1 Make the necessary settings.

2 Select [Save USER Mode] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

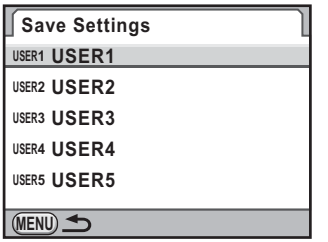
The [Save USER Mode] screen appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save Settings] and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Save Settings] screen appears.

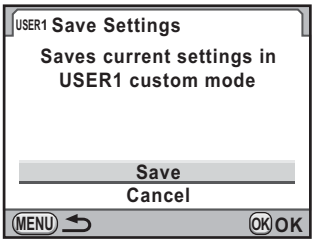


4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [USER1] to [USER5] and press the four-way controller (▶).



5 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Save] and press the OK button.

The settings are saved and the camera returns to the [Save USER Mode] screen.



Editing a Setting Name

You can change the name of the USER mode in which you saved settings.

1 Select [Rename USER Mode] in Step 3 of "Saving the Settings" and press the four-way controller (▶).

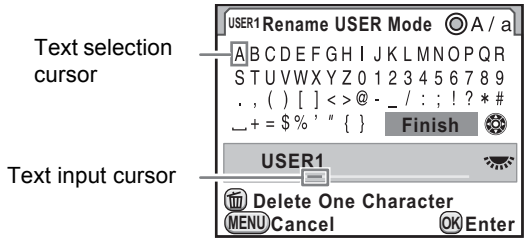
The [Rename USER Mode] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [USER1] to [USER5] and press the four-way controller (▶).

The text-entry screen appears.

3 Enter the text.

Up to 18 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols can be entered.



Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Moves the text selection cursor.
Rear e-dial (⟳)	Moves the text input cursor.
⊙ button	Switches between upper and lower case letters.
OK button	Enters a character selected with the text selection cursor at the position of the text input cursor.
🗑 button	Deletes a character at the position of the text input cursor.

4 After entering the text, move the text selection cursor to [Finish] and press the OK button.

The name is changed.

Repeat Steps 2 to 4 to change the names of other **USER** modes.

5 Press the MENU button.

Checking the Saved USER Settings

1 Select [Check Saved Settings] in Step 3 of "Saving the Settings" (p.227) and press the four-way controller (▶).

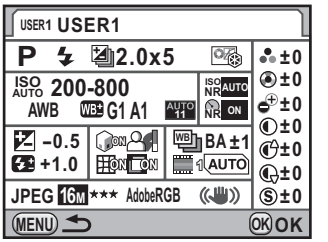
The [Check Saved Settings] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [USER1] to [USER5] and press the four-way controller (▶).

The current settings saved in the selected **USER** mode are displayed.

3 Press the OK button.

The camera returns to the [Save USER Mode] screen.



Using Saved USER Settings

You can easily retrieve saved settings.

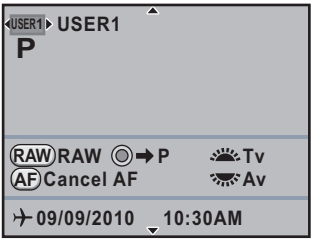
1 Set the mode dial to USER.

The USER mode guide appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (◄►) or the rear e-dial ( ) to select [USER1] to [USER5].

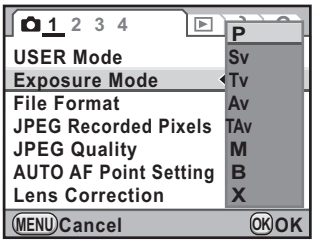
Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to check the saved settings.

The saved settings are retrieved.



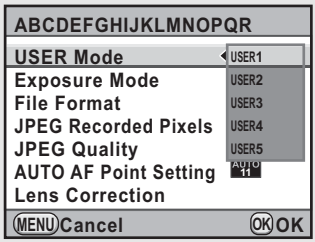
3 Change the settings as necessary.

The exposure mode can be changed in [Exposure Mode] of the [Rec. Mode 1] menu.



4 Take a picture.

- The **USER** mode guide appears for 30 seconds regardless of the [Guide Display] setting in the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu.
- [**USER**1] to [**USER**5] can also be selected from [USER Mode] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 1] menu.
- [USER Mode] and [Exposure Mode] are displayed in the [📷 Rec. Mode 1] menu only when the mode dial is set to **USER**.
- The settings changed in Step 3 are not saved as **USER** mode settings. When the camera is turned off, settings return to the original saved settings.



Changing the Settings

Changes the settings saved in **USER**1 to **USER**5.

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of "Using Saved USER Settings" (p.230).

2 Perform Steps 2 to 5 of "Saving the Settings" (p.227).

The settings are changed and resaved.

Resetting to Default Settings

Resets the settings saved in USER1 to USER5 to the default settings.

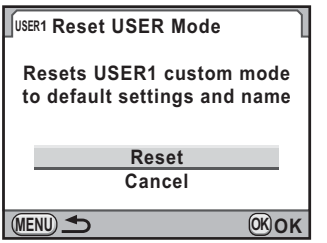
1 **Select [Reset USER Mode] in Step 3 of "Saving the Settings" (p.227) and press the four-way controller (▶).**

The [Reset USER Mode] screen appears.

2 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [USER1] to [USER5] and press the four-way controller (▶).**

3 **Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Reset] and press the OK button.**

The USER mode settings return to the default values.



7 Playback Functions

This chapter describes how to use the various playback functions in Playback mode.

Playback Functions Operation 234
Setting the Playback Display Method 236
Enlarging Images 237
Displaying Multiple Images 238
Playing Back Images Continuously 246
Rotating Images 249
Deleting Multiple Images 250
Protecting Images from Deletion (Protect) 254
Connecting the Camera to an AV Device 256

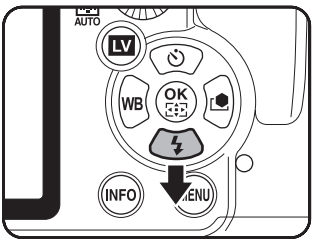
Playback Functions Operation

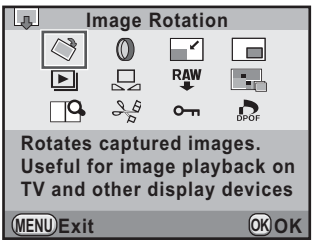
Make settings related to playing back images in the playback mode palette or [▶ Playback] menu.

Refer to “Using the Menus” (p.42) for details on how to use the menus.

Playback Mode Palette Setting Items

Press the four-way controller (▼) in Playback mode to display the playback mode palette.
You can display the playback mode palette even when a movie is paused.





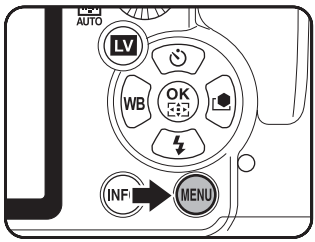
Item	Function	Page
◇ Image Rotation *1	Rotates images.	p.249
Digital Filter*1	Changes the color tone of images, adds softening and slimming effects, or adjusts the brightness.	p.265
Resize *1 *2	Changes the number of recorded pixels and quality level of the captured image and saves it as a new file.	p.262
Cropping *1	Cuts out only the desired area of the picture and saves it as a new image.	p.263
Slideshow	Plays back the images one after another.	p.246

Item	Function	Page
Save as Manual WB *1	You can copy the white balance setting of a captured image and save it as Manual White Balance.	p.213
RAW Development *1	Converts RAW images to JPEG format.	p.271
Index *1	Joins a number of images together and creates a new image with them.	p.243
Image Comparison *1	Displays two images side-by-side.	p.241
Movie Editing *3	Divides a movie and extracts segments from it.	p.179
Protect	Protects images from being accidentally erased.	p.254
DPOF *1 *2	Sets the DPOF settings.	p.309

*1 This cannot be performed when a movie is displayed.
*2 This cannot be performed when a RAW image is displayed.
*3 This can be performed only when a movie is displayed.

Playback Menu Setting Items

You can perform the following settings in the [▶ Playback] menu.
Press the **MENU** button in Playback mode to display the [▶ Playback 1] menu.



Menu	Item	Function	Page
▶1	Slideshow	Plays back the images one after another. You can set how images will be displayed in the slideshow.	p.246
	Quick Zoom	Sets the initial magnification when enlarging images.	p.236
	Bright/Dark Area	Sets whether or not to display the Bright/Dark Area warning during playback.	
	Auto Image Rotation	Sets whether to rotate images shot with the camera held vertically when playing back.	
	Delete All Images	You can delete all saved images at once.	p.253

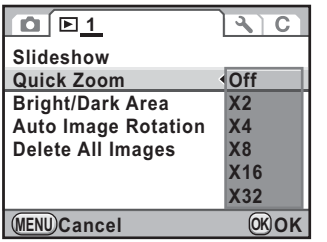
Setting the Playback Display Method

You can set the initial magnification when enlarging images, whether to display the Bright/Dark Area warning, and whether to automatically rotate images that are shot with the camera held vertically in Playback mode.

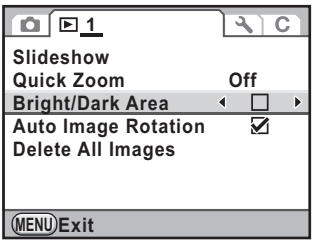
1 Select [Quick Zoom] in the [▶ Playback 1] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the magnification and press the OK button.

Select from [Off] (default setting), [×2], [×4], [×8], [×16] or [×32].



3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Bright/Dark Area] and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.



4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Auto Image Rotation] and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.

☑	During playback, the image is automatically rotated based on the rotation information when [23. Saving Rotation Info] in the [C Custom Setting 3] menu (p.92) is set to [On] or image rotation information is saved in [Image Rotation] (p.249). (default setting)
□	The image is not automatically rotated during playback.

5 Press the MENU button.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Enlarging Images

Images can be magnified up to 32 times in Playback mode.

1 Use the four-way controller (◀ ▶) to select an image in Playback mode.

2 Turn the rear e-dial (🔍) to the right (toward 🔍).

The image enlarges at each click (1.2 times to 32 times).

Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Moves the area to enlarge.
Rear e-dial (🔍) to the right (🔍) /🔍 button	Enlarges the image (up to 32 times).
Rear e-dial (🔍) to the left (⊡) /⊙ button	Reduces the image (up to 1.2 times*).
OK button	Returns to the original size.
Front e-dial (🔍)	Retains the magnification and the position of the magnified area and shows the previous/next image.
INFO button	Switches information display on/off.

*The default setting for the first click (minimum magnification) is 1.2 times. You can change this in [Quick Zoom] of the [▶ Playback 1] menu. (p.236)

memo

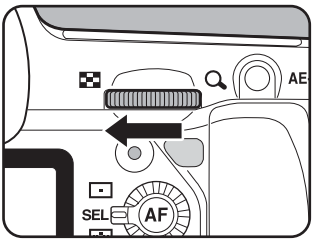
- You can enlarge the image by following the same procedure during Instant Review (p.73), Digital Preview (p.138) or Live View (p.168).
- The initial full display of vertical images is displayed with a magnification of 0.675 times that of horizontal images, therefore, magnification at the first click starts at 1.0 times.

Displaying Multiple Images

Multi-image Display Screen

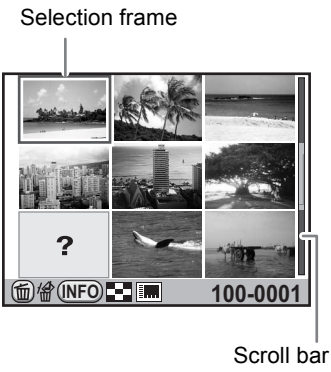
You can display 4, 9, 16, 36 or 81 thumbnail images on the monitor at the same time. The default setting is nine image-display.

1 **Turn the rear e-dial (◌) to the left (toward ⊠) in Playback mode.**

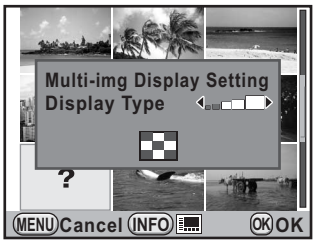


The multi-image display screen appears.

Up to nine thumbnail images are displayed at once.



Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Moves the selection frame.
INFO button	Displays the [Multi-img Display Setting] screen. Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select the number of images to display at the same time.  (Display Type cannot be selected when developing multiple RAW images (p.272).)
🗑 button	Selects multiple images and deletes them. (p.250)

2 Press the OK button.

A full screen display of the selected image appears.

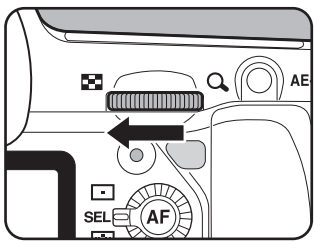
memo Icons such as 🎥 and **?** are not displayed with thumbnail images for 81-image display.

Displaying Images by Folder

Images will be grouped and displayed by folder in which they are saved.

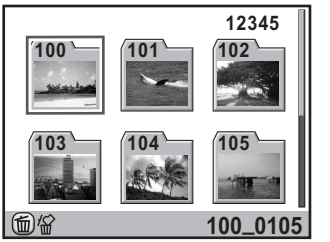
1 In the multi-image display screen, turn the rear e-dial (👁) to the left (toward ⊡) again.

The folder display screen appears.



2 Select the folder you want to display.

The number of images saved in the selected folder appears at the top right of the screen.



Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Moves the selection frame.
🗑 button	Deletes the selected folder and all the images in it. (p.252)

3 Press the OK button.

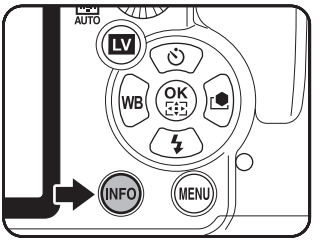
The multi-image display screen for the selected folder appears.

Displaying Images by the Shooting Date (Calendar Display)

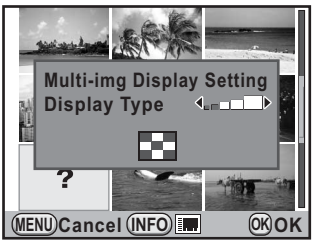
Images will be grouped and displayed by the shooting date.

1 In the multi-image display screen, press the INFO button.

The [Multi-img Display Setting] screen appears.



2 Press the INFO button again.



The calendar display screen appears.

Only the dates when pictures were taken are displayed.

Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼)	Selects a shooting date.
Four-way controller (◄►)	Selects an image taken on the selected shooting date.
Rear e-dial (⟳) to the right (🔍)	Displays the selected image. Turn to the left (⊞) to return to the calendar display.
INFO button	The camera returns to the multi-image display screen.
🗑 button	Deletes selected images.

3 Press the OK button.

A full screen display of the selected image appears.

Comparing Images

You can display two images side-by-side.

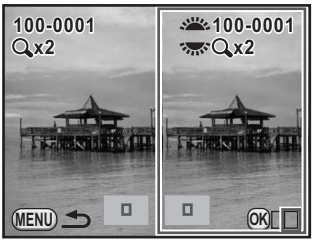
1 Press the four-way controller (▼) in Playback mode.

The playback mode palette appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select ⧉ (Image Comparison) and press the OK button.

The last image displayed will be displayed twice side-by-side.

3 Select two images you want to compare using the e-dials and compare them at left and right.



Available operations

OK button	Moves the selection frame to the right image, both images, and left image each time the button is pressed.
Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Moves the area to enlarge. When the selection frame is placed on both images, you can manipulate both images at the same time.
⊙ button	Returns a position of the enlarged area to the center.
Front e-dial (⟳)	When the selection frame is placed on the left or right image, the previous or next image is displayed.
Rear e-dial (⟳)	Enlarges or reduces the image. When the selection frame is placed on both images, you can manipulate both images at the same time.
INFO button	Switches information display On/Off.
🗑 button	When the selection frame is placed on the left or right image, the selected image is deleted.

4 Press the MENU button.

The camera returns to the normal playback mode.

Joining Multiple Images (Index)

Join a number of images together and display them as an index print. You can also save the displayed index print as a new image. You can select the images to include in the index print or have them randomly-arranged.

memo This function is not available for movies.

1 **Press the four-way controller (▼) in Playback mode.**

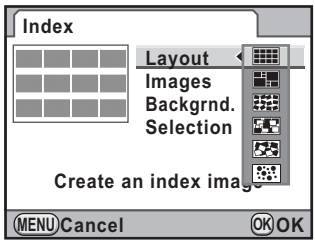
The playback mode palette appears.

2 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select (Index) and press the OK button.**

The [Index] screen appears.

3 **Press the four-way controller (►).**

4 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a layout and press the OK button.**

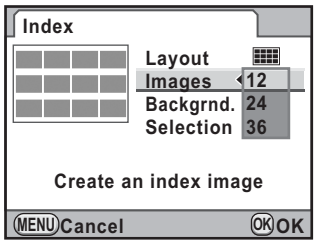


You can select (Thumbnail), (Square), (Random1), (Random2), (Random3) or (Bubble).

Images are displayed according to the file number (from the smallest number) for , and are displayed in random order for other layouts.

5 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Images] and press the four-way controller (►).**

6 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the number of images and press the OK button.**



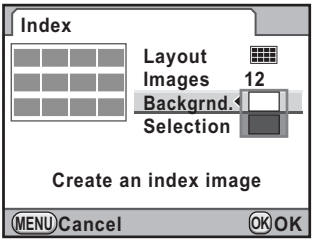
You can select 12, 24 or 36 images.

When the number of saved images is smaller than the number selected, empty spaces will appear when [Layout] is set to and some images may be duplicated for other layouts.

7 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Backgrnd.] and press the four-way controller (▶).

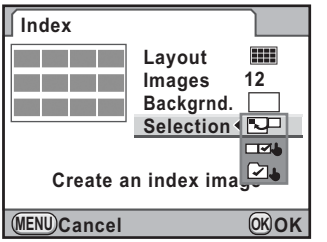
8 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the background color and press the OK button.

You can select a white or black background.



9 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Selection] and press the four-way controller (▶).

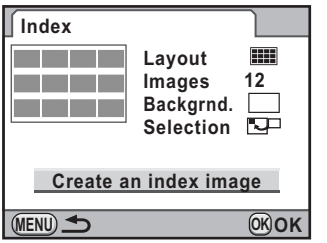
10 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a type of image selection and press the OK button.



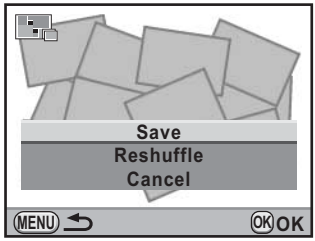
All images	Picks images automatically from all of the images saved.
Manual	Individually select images you want to include in the index. Continue by selecting [Select image(s)] and select the individual images.
Folder name	Picks images automatically from the folder selected. Continue by selecting [Select a folder] and select the folder.

11 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Create an index image] and press the OK button.

The index image is created and a confirmation screen appears.



12 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save] or [Reshuffle] and press the OK button.



Save	The index image is saved as a 6M and ★★★ file.
Reshuffle	Reselects the images to be included in the index and displays a new index image. However, if [Thumbnail] is selected for [Layout], this item is not displayed.

After the index image is saved, the camera returns to Playback mode and the index image is displayed.

memo Processing may take a while when creating an index image.

Playing Back Images Continuously

You can play back all images saved on your SD Memory Card successively in the slideshow.

Setting the Slideshow Display

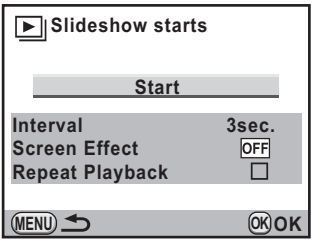
Sets how images will be displayed during the Slideshow.

1 Select [Slideshow] in the [▶ Playback 1] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The screen to make the slideshow settings appears.

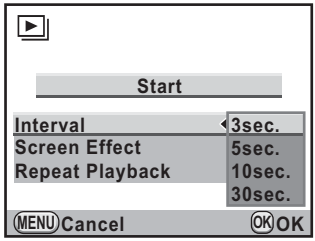
2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select an item you want to change.

The following items can be changed.



Item	Description	Setting
Interval	Select an image display interval.	3sec. (default setting)/ 5sec./10sec./30sec.
Screen Effect	Select a transition effect when the next image is displayed.	Off (default setting)/Fade/ Wipe/Stripe
Repeat Playback	Set whether to start the slideshow again from the beginning after the last image is displayed.	□ (default setting)/☑

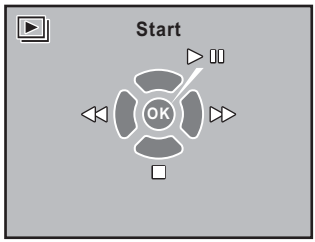
3 **Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to change the setting and press the OK button.**



Starting the Slideshow

1 **Select [Start] in Step 2 on p.246 and press the OK button. Or, select (Slideshow) in the playback mode palette and press the OK button.**

The start screen is displayed and the slideshow begins.



Available operations

OK button	Pauses playback. Press again to resume playback.
Four-way controller (◀)	Shows the previous image.
Four-way controller (▶)	Shows the next image.
Four-way controller (▼)	Stops playback.

2 Stop the slideshow.

Slideshow ends when one of the following operations is performed during playback or pause.

- the four-way controller (▼) is pressed *1
- the ▶ button is pressed *1
- the **MENU** button is pressed *1
- the shutter release button is pressed halfway or fully *2
- the mode dial is turned *2
- the **AF** button is pressed *2
- the main switch is turned to ↻ *2

*1 After slideshow ends, the camera switches to normal Playback mode.
*2 After slideshow ends, the camera switches to Capture mode.

memo

For movies, only the first frame is displayed and then the next image is displayed after the set interval has elapsed. To play a movie during a slideshow, press the **OK** button while the first frame is displayed. After the movie has finished playing, the slideshow will resume.

Rotating Images

When pictures are taken with K-5 held vertically, the vertical position sensor activates and rotation information is added to the image to enable playback with the correct image orientation. You can change the rotation information and save the image using the following procedure.

memo

- When [23. Saving Rotation Info] in the [C Custom Setting 4] menu (p.92) is set to [Off], the image rotation information is not saved when shooting.
- When [Auto Image Rotation] (p.236) in the [▶ Playback 1] menu is set to ☑ (On), an image with rotation information is automatically rotated during playback.

Caution

You cannot change the image rotation information in the following conditions.
- when the image is protected
- when the image rotation information tag is not saved with the image
- when [Auto Image Rotation] (p.236) in the [▶ Playback 1] menu is set to □ (Off)

1 Select the image you want to rotate in Playback mode.

2 Press the four-way controller (▼).

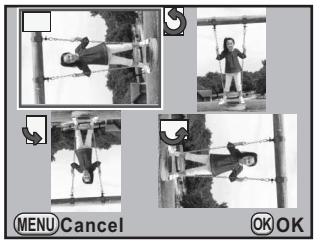
The playback mode palette appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select ◇ (Image Rotation) and press the OK button.

The selected image is rotated in 90° increments and the four thumbnail images are displayed.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select a desired rotation direction and press the OK button.

The image rotation information is saved.



Deleting Multiple Images

Deleting Selected Images

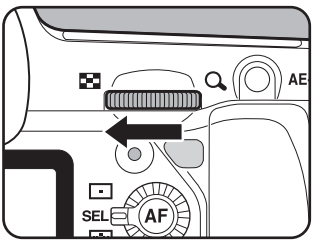
You can delete multiple images in the multi-image display at once.

Caution Deleted images cannot be restored.

memo
- Protected images cannot be deleted.
- You can select up to 100 images at a time.

1 Turn the rear e-dial (⟳) to the left (toward ⊞) in Playback mode.

The multi-image display screen appears.



2 Press the 🗑 button.

The screen to select the images to delete is displayed.

The screen temporarily changes to 36-image display when [Multi-img Display Setting] (p.239) is set to 81-image display.

3 Select the images to delete.

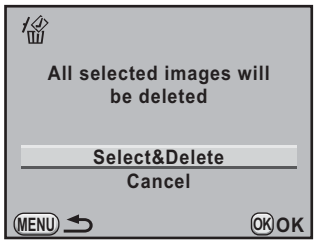
Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Moves the selection frame.
OK button	Adds ☑ and selects an image. Press again to return to □. Protected images (🔑) cannot be selected.
Rear e-dial (🔄)	Displays a full screen display of the image selected with the selection frame. When the image is displayed full screen, press the four-way controller (◀▶) to display the previous or next image.

4 Press the 🗑 button.

The delete confirmation screen appears.

5 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Select & Delete].



6 Press the OK button.

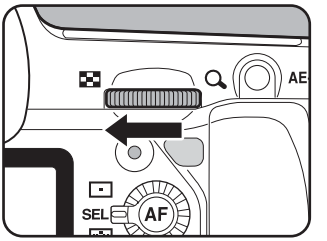
The selected images are deleted.

Deleting a Folder

You can delete a selected folder and all the images in it.

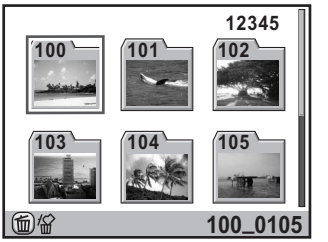
1 Turn the rear e-dial (⟳) two clicks to the left (toward ⊡) in Playback mode.

The folder display screen appears.

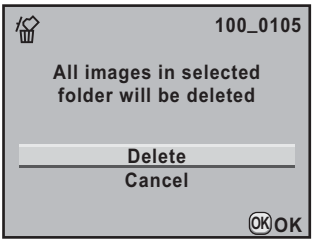


2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select a folder to delete and press the 🗑 button.

The delete folder confirmation screen appears.



3 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Delete].

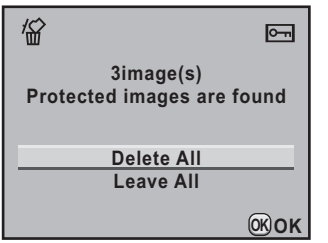


4 Press the OK button.

The selected folder and all images in it are deleted.

The confirmation screen appears when there are protected images. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Delete All] or [Leave All] and press the **OK** button.

When [Delete All] is selected, protected images are also deleted.



Deleting All Images

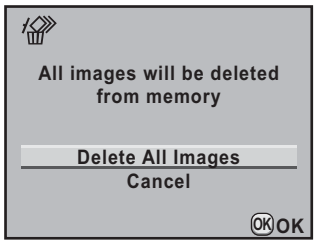
You can delete all saved images at once.

Caution Deleted images cannot be restored.

1 Select [Delete All Images] in the [▶ Playback 1] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The confirmation screen for deleting all images is displayed.

2 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Delete All Images].

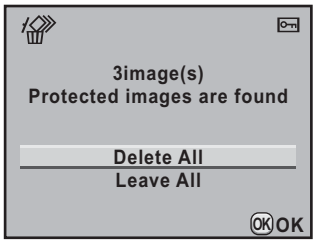


3 Press the OK button.

All images are deleted.

The confirmation screen appears when there are protected images. Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Delete All] or [Leave All] and press the **OK** button.

When [Delete All] is selected, protected images are also deleted.



Protecting Images from Deletion (Protect)

You can protect images from being accidentally deleted.

Caution Even protected images are deleted if the inserted SD Memory Card is formatted.

Protecting a Single Image

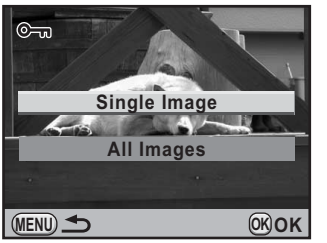
1 **Press the four-way controller (▼) in Playback mode.**

The playback mode palette appears.

2 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select (Protect) and press the OK button.**

The screen to select the protection setting method is displayed.

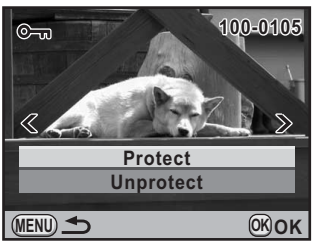
3 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Single Image] and press the OK button.**



4 **Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select an image to protect.**

5 **Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Protect].**

Select [Unprotect] to cancel the protection of the image.



6 Press the OK button.

The image is protected and the 🔑 icon appears at the top right of the screen.

Repeat Steps 4 to 6 to protect other images.

7 Press the MENU button.

The camera returns to Playback mode.

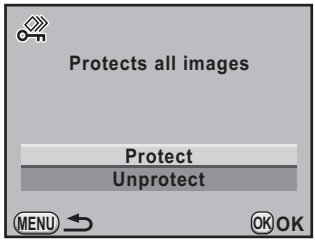
Protecting All Images

1 Select [All Images] in Step 3 on p.254 and press the OK button.

2 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Protect] and press the OK button.

All images saved on the SD Memory Card are protected.

Select [Unprotect] to cancel the protection of all images.



Connecting the Camera to an AV Device

You can connect the camera to a TV or other device with a video input terminal or HDMI terminal and play back images.

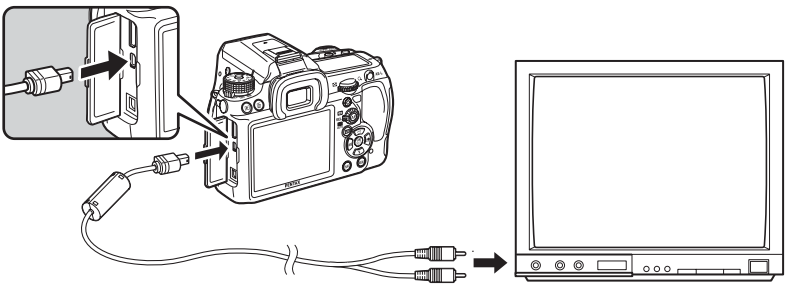
- If you intend to use the camera continuously for a long period, use of the AC adapter kit K-AC50 (optional) is recommended. (p.53)
- For an AV device with multiple video input terminals, check the operating manual of the AV device, and select a suitable video input terminal for connecting the camera.
- You cannot output composite and HDMI video at the same time.
- You cannot adjust the volume on the camera while the camera is connected to the AV device. Adjust the volume on the AV device.
- If you want to view a movie on an external monitor while recording it, connect the camera to an AV device with the mini HDMI terminal. You cannot output a movie using the video input terminal while recording.

Connecting the Camera to a Video Input Terminal

Use the provided AV cable I-AVC7 to connect the camera to a device with a video input terminal.

1 Turn the AV device and camera off.

2 Open the terminal cover, face the arrow on the AV cable toward the ▲ mark on the camera, and connect the cable to the PC/AV terminal.



3 Connect the other end of the AV cable to the video input terminal on the AV device.

4 Turn the AV device and camera on.

The camera turns on in video mode, and the camera information is displayed on the screen of the connected AV device.

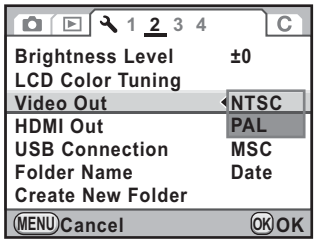
memo Even if you used an external microphone to record movie sound in stereo, monaural sound is played back.

Selecting the Video Output Format

When the hometown is set at the time of initial setting (p.63), the video output format is set in accordance with that region. Depending on the country or region, images may fail to be played back with the set video output format. If this happens, change the video output format setting.

1 Select [Video Out] in the [🔧 Set-up 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [NTSC] or [PAL] and press the OK button.



3 Press the MENU button.

The video output format is set.

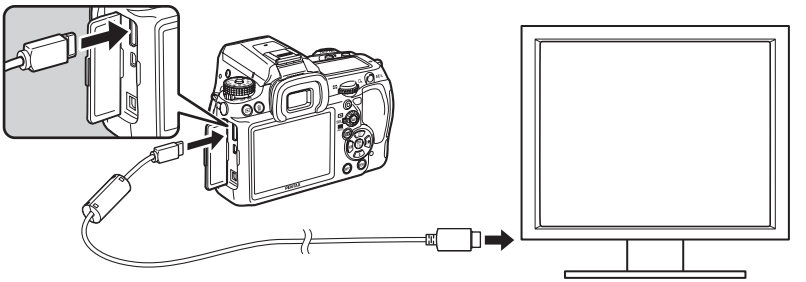
memo The video output format differs depending on the region. When you set [Setting the Time] in the World Time setting (p.289) to ✈ (Destination), the video output setting changes to the video output format for that city.

Connecting the Camera to an HDMI Terminal

Use a commercially available HDMI cable to connect the camera to a device with an HDMI terminal.

1 Turn the AV device and camera off.

2 Open the terminal cover and connect the HDMI cable to the mini HDMI terminal.



3 Connect the other end of the HDMI cable to the HDMI input terminal on the AV device.

4 Turn the AV device and camera on.

The camera turns on in HDMI mode, and the camera information is displayed on the screen of the connected AV device.

memo

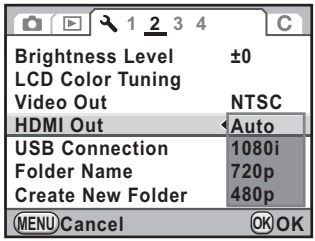
- The camera has a mini HDMI terminal (Type C). Use a commercially available HDMI cable that matches your AV device.
- Nothing is displayed on the camera monitor during HDMI output.
- If you used an external microphone to record movie sound in stereo, the sound is played back in stereo.

Selecting the HDMI Output Format

Set the output signal format of the HDMI terminal.

1 Select [HDMI Out] in the [🔧 Set-up 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the HDMI output format.



Auto	The maximum size corresponding to the AV device and camera is automatically selected. (default setting)
1080i	1920×1080i
720p	1280×720p
480p *1	720×480p

*1 This depends on the selected video output format; [480p] for NTSC and [576p] (720×576p) for PAL.

3 Press the OK button.

4 Press the MENU button.

The HDMI output format is set.

memo

- When the HDMI output format is set to [1080i] or [720p], the display of the AV device may appear with a screen design that differs from that displayed on the camera.
- The Bright/Dark Area warning is not displayed during Live View.
- When the exposure mode is set to 🎥 (Movie), the output format is fixed to [480p] regardless of the HDMI output format setting.

Memo

8 Processing Images

This chapter describes how to process pictures taken and edit RAW images.

Changing the Image Size 262
Processing Images with Digital Filters 265
Developing RAW Images 271

Changing the Image Size

Changes the number of recorded pixels and quality level of the image, and saves the image as a new file.

Changing the Number of Recorded Pixels and Quality Level (Resize)

Changes the number of recorded pixels and quality level of the selected image and saves it as a new image. The number of recorded pixels can be reduced while still obtaining an image with good quality.

Caution

- Only JPEG files captured with this camera can be resized.
- You cannot select a larger resolution than that of the original image.
- Images already resized to 0.2M or 0.3M with this camera cannot be resized.

1 **Select an image to resize in Playback mode.**

2 **Press the four-way controller (▼).**

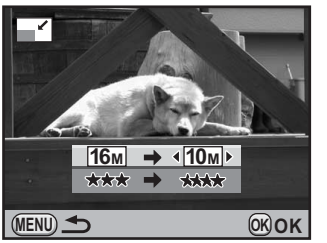
The playback mode palette appears.

3 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select (Resize) and press the OK button.**

The screen to select the recorded pixels and quality level appears.

4 **Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select the desired image size.**

You can select one of the image sizes starting from one size smaller than that of the original image. The selectable sizes vary according to the original image size and aspect ratio.



5 **Press the four-way controller (▼) and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select the quality level.**

You can select ★★★★, ★★★, ★★ or ★.

6 Press the OK button.

The save confirmation screen appears.

7 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.

The resized image is saved as a new image.

Cutting Out Part of the Image (Cropping)

Cuts out only the desired area of the selected image and saves it as a new image.The aspect ratio can also be changed.

Caution

- Only JPEG and RAW files captured with this camera can be cropped.
- Images already resized to 0.2M or 0.3M with this camera cannot be cropped.

1 Select an image to crop in Playback mode.

2 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The playback mode palette appears.

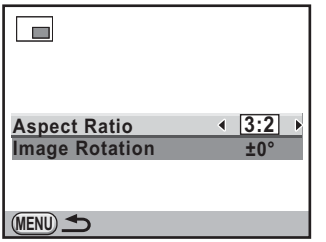
3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select (Cropping) and press the OK button.

The cropping frame to specify the size and position of the area to crop appears on the screen.

4 Specify the size and position of the area to crop by using cropping frame.

Available operations

Rear e-dial (⟳)	Changes the size of the cropping frame.
Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Moves the cropping frame.
INFO button	Changes the aspect ratio. Select from [3:2], [4:3], [16:9] or [1:1]. The image can also be rotated from -45° to +45° in increments of 1°.
⦿ button	Rotates the cropping frame in 90° increments. ⦿ appears only when the cropping frame can be rotated.

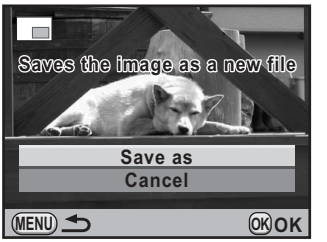


5 Press the OK button.

The save confirmation screen appears.

6 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.

The cropped image is saved as a new image.



Processing Images with Digital Filters

You can edit captured images using digital filters.
The following filters are available.

Filter Name	Effect	Parameter
Toy Camera	Creates an image that looks as though it was shot with a toy camera.	Shading Level: +1 to +3
		Blur: +1 to +3
		Tone Break: Red/Green/Blue/Yellow
Retro	Creates an image with the look of an old photo.	Toning (B-A): 7 levels
		Frame Composite: None/Thin/ Medium/Thick
High Contrast	Enhances the contrast in the image.	+1 to +5
Sketch Filter	Creates an image that looks as though it was drawn with a pencil.	Contrast: Low/Medium/High
		Scratch Effect: OFF/ON
Water Color	Creates an image that looks as though it was painted.	Intensity: +1 to +3
		Saturation: OFF/Low/Medium/High
Pastel	Creates an image that looks as though it was drawn with a crayon.	Weak/Medium/Strong
Posterization	Lessens the tone of the image to create an image that looks as though it was hand-drawn.	+1 to +5
Miniature	Blurs part of the image to create a fake miniature scene.	In-Focus Plane: -3 to +3
		In-Focus Width: Narrow/Middle/Wide
		In-Focus Plane Angle: Side/Vertical/ Positive Slope/Negative Slope
		Blur: +1 to +3
Base Parameter Adj	Adjusts the parameters to create the desired image.	Brightness: -8 to +8
		Saturation: -3 to +3
		Hue: -3 to +3
		Contrast: -3 to +3
		Sharpness: -3 to +3
Monochrome	Creates a monochrome image such as a black-and-white photo.	Filter Effect: OFF/Red/Green/Blue/ Infrared Filter
		Toning (B-A): 7 levels

Filter Name	Effect	Parameter
Color	Adds a color filter to the image. Select from 18 filters (6 colors × 3 tones).	Color: Red/Magenta/Blue/Cyan/Green/Yellow
		Color Density: Light/Standard/Dark
Extract Color	Extracts two specific colors and shoots the rest of the image in black and white.	Extracted Color 1: Red/Magenta/Blue/Cyan/Green/Yellow
		Extractable Range of Color 1: -2 to +2
		Extracted Color 2: Red/Magenta/Blue/Cyan/Green/Yellow/OFF
		Extractable Range of Color 2: -2 to +2
Soft	Creates an image with a soft focus throughout the image.	Soft Focus: +1 to +3
		Shadow Blur: OFF/ON
Starburst	For taking pictures of night scenes or lights reflected on water with a special sparkling look by adding extra glitter to the highlights.	Shape: Cross/Star/Snow Crystal/Heart/Musical Note
		Effect Density: Small/Medium/Large
		Size: Small/Medium/Large
		Angle: 0°/30°/45°/60°
Fish-eye	Creates an image that looks as though it was shot with a fish-eye lens.	Weak/Medium/Strong
Slim	Changes the horizontal and vertical ratio of images.	-8 to +8
HDR	Creates an image that looks like a high dynamic range image.	Weak/Medium/Strong
Custom Filter	Customize and save a filter to your own preferences.	High Contrast: OFF/+1 to +5
		Soft Focus: OFF/+1 to +3
		Tone Break: OFF/Red/Green/Blue/Yellow
		Shading Type: 6 types
		Shading Level: -3 to +3
		Distortion Type: 3 types
		Distortion Level: OFF/Weak/Medium/Strong
		Invert Color: OFF/ON

memo Only JPEG and RAW files captured with this camera can be edited using the Digital Filter.

Applying the Digital Filter

1 **Select an image for applying the digital filter in Playback mode.**

2 **Press the four-way controller (▼).**

The playback mode palette appears.

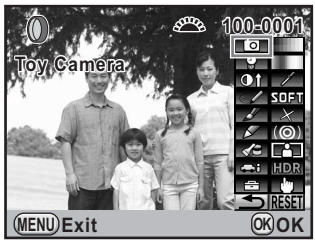
3 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select (Digital Filter) and press the OK button.**

The screen to select a filter appears.

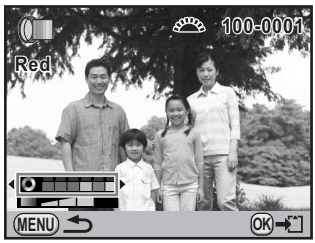
4 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select a filter and press the OK button.**

After selecting a filter, you can check the effect on the screen.

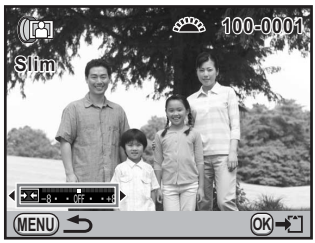
You can turn the front e-dial ( ) to select a different image.



5 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a parameter and the four-way controller (◀▶) to adjust the value.**



Color Filter



Slim Filter

6 Press the OK button.

The save confirmation screen appears.

7 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Use filters in combination] or [Save as].

Select [Use filters in combination] when you want to apply additional filters to the same image.

8 Press the OK button.

If [Use filters in combination] was selected, the camera returns to Step 4.

If [Save as] was selected, the filter-processed image is saved as a new image.

memo Up to 20 filters, including a digital filter used during shooting (p.162), can be combined to the same image.

Recreating Filter Effects

Retrieves the setting of an image with filter effects and applies the same filter effects to other images.

1 Select a filter-processed image in Playback mode.

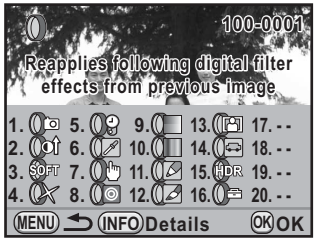
2 Select (Digital Filter) in the playback mode palette.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Recreating filter effects] and press the OK button.

The history of the filter set for the selected image appears.

4 To check the parameter details, press the INFO button.

You can check the filter parameters.



5 Press the OK button.

The image selection screen appears.

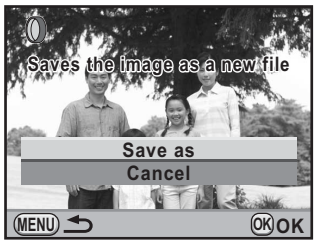
6 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select an image for applying the same filter effects and press the OK button.

You can only select an image that has not been processed with a filter.

The save confirmation screen appears.

7 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.

The filter-processed image is saved as a new image.



Searching for the Original Image

Searches for and displays the original image prior to digital filter application.

1 Select [Searching for the original image] in Step 3 on p.268 and press the OK button.

The original image prior to digital filter application is retrieved.

memo If the original image is no longer stored on the SD Memory Card, the message [Original image, prior to digital filter application, is not found] appears.

Developing RAW Images

You can convert captured RAW files into JPEG or TIFF files.

Caution Only RAW files captured with this camera can be edited. RAW files and JPEG files captured with other cameras cannot be edited on this camera.

Developing One RAW Image

1 Select a RAW image in Playback mode.

2 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The playback mode palette appears.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select RAW (RAW Development) and press the OK button.

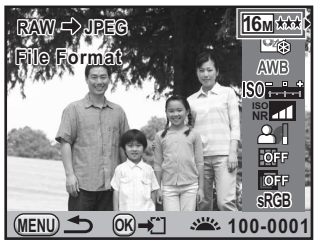
The screen to select a development method is displayed.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Developing a Single Image] and press the OK button.

The parameters recorded in the image file appear.

You can turn the front e-dial (⟳) to select a different image.

To specify the parameters before developing, refer to “Specifying the Parameters” (p.274).



5 **Press the OK button.**

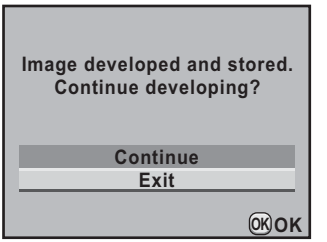
The save confirmation screen appears.

6 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.**

The RAW image is developed and saved as a new image.

7 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Continue] or [Exit].**

Select [Continue] to edit other images.



8 **Press the OK button.**

If you select [Continue] in Step 7, the screen for selecting the parameters in Step 4 appears again.

Developing Multiple RAW Images

You can develop multiple RAW images with the same settings.

1 **Select [Developing Multiple Images] in Step 4 on p.271 and press the OK button.**

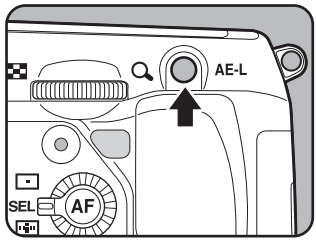
The multi-image display screen appears.

Refer to p.238 for details on operations in the multi-image display screen.

2 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) to select the RAW images to be developed and press the OK button.**

3 Press the AE-L button.

The development confirmation screen appears.



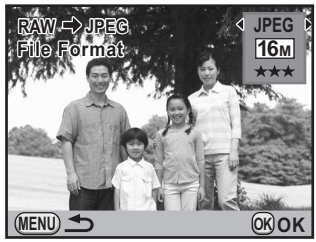
4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Develop images as shot] or [Develop images with modified settings].

To change parameters, select [Develop images with modified settings]. Refer to "Specifying the Parameters" (p.274) for details.

The screen to select a parameter appears.

5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to set [File Format], [Recorded Pixels] and [Quality Level].

You can select [JPEG] or [TIFF] for the file format. If [TIFF] is selected, the [Recorded Pixels] and [Quality Level] settings are not available.

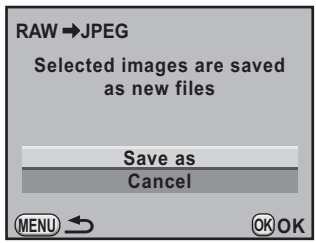


6 Press the OK button.

The save confirmation screen appears.

7 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.

The selected RAW images are developed and saved as new images.



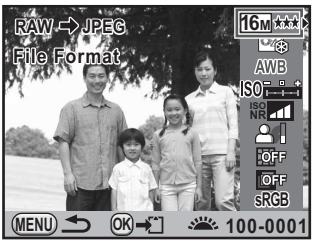
Specifying the Parameters

Specify the parameters for developing RAW images.
The following parameters can be changed.

Parameter	Value	Page
File Format	JPEG/TIFF	-
Recorded Pixels *1	16M (4928×3264)/10M (3936×2624)/ 6M (3072×2048)/2M (1728×1152)	p.200
Quality Level *1	★★★★ (Premium) / ★★★ (Best) / ★★ (Better) / ★ (Good)	p.201
Custom Image	Bright/Natural/Portrait/Landscape/Vibrant/ Muted/Bleach Bypass/Reversal Film/ Monochrome	p.222
White Balance *2	**AWB** (Auto)/☼ (Daylight)/ (Shade)/ (Cloudy)/**D** (Fluorescent Light Daylight Color)/**N** (Fluorescent Light Daylight White)/**W** (Fluorescent Light Cool White)/ **L** (Fluorescent Light Warm White)/ (Tungsten Light)/WB (Flash)/ **CTE**/ (Manual)/**K** (Color Temperature)	p.205
Sensitivity	-2.0 to +2.0	-
High-ISO NR	Auto/Off/Low/Medium/High	p.98
Shadow Correction	Off/Low/Medium/High	p.214
Distortion Correction *3	Off/On	p.218
Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj *3	Off/On	p.218
Color Space	sRGB/AdobeRGB	p.212

*1 This cannot be set when [File Format] is set to [TIFF]. (The setting is fixed to 16M.)
*2 This cannot be set for RAW files taken in Multi-exposure mode.
*3 This can be selected only when a compatible lens is attached. (p.337)

1 Press the four-way controller (▲▼) in Step 4 on p.271 to choose the parameter you want to change.



2 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to change the value.

Press the four-way controller (►) to display the setting screen for White Balance and Custom Image.

3 Press the OK button.

The save confirmation screen appears.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Save as] and press the OK button.

The RAW image is developed and saved as a new image.

- You cannot save the background image and use Digital Preview with White Balance and Custom Image.
- When the white balance is set to ⊟ (Manual), press the **INFO** button to display the measuring screen.

Memo

9 Changing Additional Settings

This chapter describes how to change additional settings.

How to Operate the Set-up Menu 278

Formatting the SD Memory Card 281

Customizing Buttons and Dials 282

Setting the Beep, Date and Time, and Display Language 288

Adjusting the Monitor and the Menu Display.....293

Setting the Folder/File Number 300

Selecting the Power Settings 304

Setting the Photographer Information 307

Setting the DPOF Settings 309

Correcting Defective Pixels in the CMOS Sensor (Pixel Mapping) 311

Selecting Settings to Save in the Camera (Memory) 312

How to Operate the Set-up Menu

Perform general settings related to the camera in the [🔧 Set-up] menu.

Refer to “Using the Menus” (p.42) for details on how to use the menus.

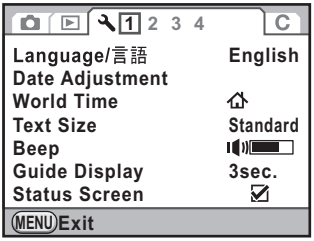
Set-up Menu Setting Items

Perform the following settings in the [🔧 Set-up 1-4] menus.
Press the **MENU** button in Capture/Playback mode and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to display the [🔧 Set-up 1-4] menus.

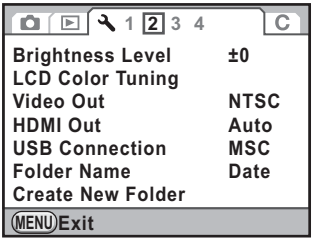
Menu	Item	Function	Page
🔧1	Language/言語	Changes the language in which menus and messages appear.	p.292
	Date Adjustment	Sets the date format and time.	p.289
	World Time	Sets the display of the local date and time of the specified city so they can be displayed on the monitor in addition to the present location when traveling overseas.	p.289
	Text Size	Sets the text size of an item selected on the respective menu screens.	p.293
	Beep	Switches the beep tone on/off.	p.288
	Guide Display	Sets whether to display indicators on the monitor.	p.293
	Status Screen	Sets the display color of the status screen and control panel.	p.295

Menu	Item	Function	Page
2	Brightness Level	Changes the brightness of the monitor.	p.297
	LCD Color Tuning	Adjusts the color of the monitor.	p.298
	Video Out	Sets the output format when connecting to an AV device with a video input terminal.	p.257
	HDMI Out	Sets the HDMI output format when connecting to an AV device with an HDMI terminal.	p.259
	USB Connection	Sets the USB connection mode when connecting to a computer.	p.317
	Folder Name	Sets the naming system of the folder for storing images.	p.300
	Create New Folder	Creates a new folder on the SD Memory Card.	p.300
3	File Name	Sets the method used to assign file names for images.	p.302
	Copyright Information	Sets the photographer and copyright information embedded in Exif.	p.307
	Auto Power Off	Sets the time until the camera turns off automatically.	p.304
	Select Battery	Sets the battery to use when the optional battery grip (D-BG4) is attached.	p.305
	Reset	Resets all settings.	p.335
4	Pixel Mapping	Maps out and corrects any defective pixels in the CMOS sensor.	p.311
	Dust Alert	Detects dust adhering to the CMOS sensor.	p.341
	Dust Removal	Cleans the CMOS sensor using ultrasonic vibrations.	p.340
	Sensor Cleaning	Locks the mirror in the up position for cleaning the CMOS sensor with a blower.	p.343
	Format	Formats an SD Memory Card.	p.281

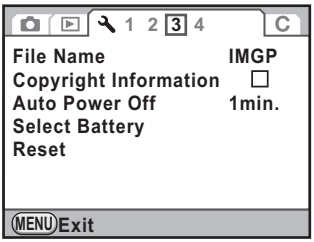
● [Set-up 1] menu



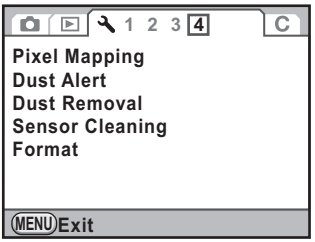
● [Set-up 2] menu



● [Set-up 3] menu



● [Set-up 4] menu



Formatting the SD Memory Card

Use this camera to format (initialize) an SD Memory Card that is unused or has been used on other cameras or digital devices.
Formatting deletes all the data saved on the SD Memory Card.

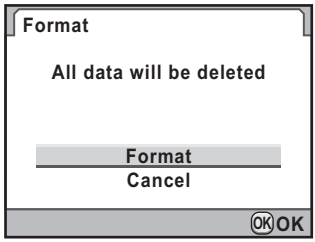
Caution

- Do not remove the SD Memory Card while formatting. The card may be damaged and become unusable.
- Formatting deletes all data, either protected or unprotected. Be aware.

1 Select [Format] in the [🔧 Set-up 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

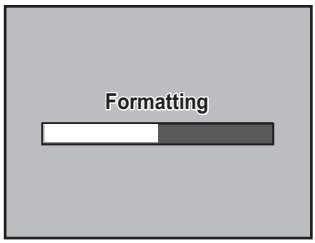
The [Format] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Format].



3 Press the OK button.

Formatting starts.
When formatting is completed, the screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.



memo

When an SD Memory Card is formatted, the volume label assigned to the card is “K-5”. When the K-5 is connected to a computer, the SD Memory Card is recognized as a removable disk with the name “K-5”. (p.318)

Customizing Buttons and Dials

You can set the functions for when the **RAW**/**Fx** button, **AF** button or Preview dial is operated, or when the shutter release button is pressed halfway.

Setting the Function for the E-dials

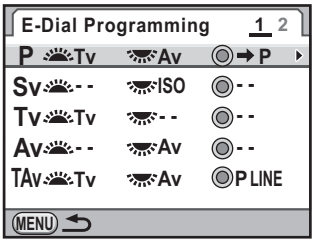
For each exposure mode, you can set the functions for when the front and rear e-dials or ⦿ button are operated.

1 Select [E-Dial Programming] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [E-Dial Programming 1] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select an exposure mode.

Turn the rear e-dial (🔄) to display the [E-Dial Programming 2] screen.

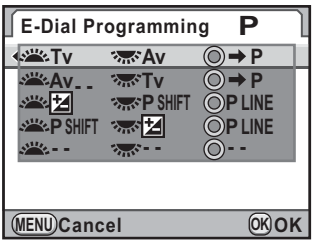


3 Press the four-way controller (▶).

The screen for the selected exposure mode appears.

4 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a function.

You can perform the following settings for each exposure mode.



Exposure Mode	Front E-dial	Rear E-dial	⦿ Button
P	**Tv** (Shutter speed)	**Av** (Aperture)	➡ **P** (Return to **P**)
	Av (Aperture)	**Tv** (Shutter speed)	➡ **P** (Return to **P**)
	± (EV Compensation)	**P** SHIFT (Program Shift)	**P** LINE (Program Line)
	P SHIFT (Program Shift)	± (EV Compensation)	**P** LINE (Program Line)
	–	–	–
Sv	–	**ISO** (Sensitivity)	–
	ISO (Sensitivity)	–	–
	P SHIFT (Program Shift)	**ISO** (Sensitivity)	**P** LINE (Program Line)
	ISO (Sensitivity)	**P** SHIFT (Program Shift)	**P** LINE (Program Line)
	± (EV Compensation)	**ISO** (Sensitivity)	–
	ISO (Sensitivity)	± (EV Compensation)	–
Tv	**Tv** (Shutter speed)	–	–
	–	**Tv** (Shutter speed)	–
	Tv (Shutter speed)	± (EV Compensation)	–
	± (EV Compensation)	**Tv** (Shutter speed)	–
	Tv (Shutter speed)	**ISO** (Sensitivity)	**ISO** AUTO
	ISO (Sensitivity)	**Tv** (Shutter speed)	**ISO** AUTO

Exposure Mode	Front E-dial	Rear E-dial	⊙ Button
Av	–	**Av** (Aperture)	–
	Av (Aperture)	–	–
	± (EV Compensation)	**Av** (Aperture)	–
	Av (Aperture)	± (EV Compensation)	–
	ISO (Sensitivity)	**Av** (Aperture)	**ISO** AUTO
	Av (Aperture)	**ISO** (Sensitivity)	**ISO** AUTO
TAv /M	**Tv** (Shutter speed)	**Av** (Aperture)	
	Av (Aperture)	**Tv** (Shutter speed)	
			P LINE (Program Line)
			Tv SHIFT (Shutter speed shift)
			Av SHIFT (Aperture shift)
			–
B	–	**Av** (Aperture)	–
	Av (Aperture)	–	–
	ISO (Sensitivity)	**Av** (Aperture)	–
	Av (Aperture)	**ISO** (Sensitivity)	–
X	–	**Av** (Aperture)	
	Av (Aperture)	–	
	ISO (Sensitivity)	**Av** (Aperture)	
	Av (Aperture)	**ISO** (Sensitivity)	
			Av SHIFT (Aperture shift)
			–

Exposure Mode	Front E-dial	Rear E-dial	⊙ Button
	–	Av (Aperture)	
	Av (Aperture)	–	
	± (EV Compensation)	Av (Aperture)	
	Av (Aperture)	± (EV Compensation)	
			Av SHIFT (Aperture shift)
			–

5 Press the OK button.

6 Press the MENU button three times.

The camera is ready to take a picture.

Setting the Function for the Buttons

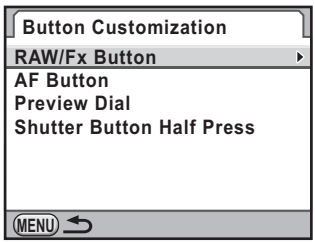
You can set the functions for when the **RAW/Fx** button, **AF** button, Preview dial (main switch ⟲) is operated, or when the shutter release button is pressed halfway.

1 Select [Button Customization] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Button Customization] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a button to set a function to and press the four-way controller (▶).

The screen to set the function for the selected button is displayed.



3 Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a function.

The following functions can be assigned to each button.

Button	Setting	Function	Page
RAW/**Fx** button	One Push File Format	Temporarily changes the file format.	p.203
	Exposure Bracketing	Sets the Exposure Bracketing.	p.157
	Digital Preview	Displays the Digital Preview.	p.138
	Electronic Level	Displays the Electronic Level on the monitor.	p.28
	Composition Adjust.	Displays the [Composition Adjust.] screen.	p.220
AF button	Enable AF	The autofocus system operates.	p.124
	Cancel AF	Disables autofocus with the shutter release button while the button is pressed.	
Preview Dial	Optical Preview	Displays the Optical Preview when the main switch is turned to the preview position (⟲).	p.135
	Digital Preview	Displays the Digital Preview when the main switch is turned to the preview position (⟲).	
Shutter release button pressed halfway	Enable AF	The autofocus system operates.	-
	Off	The autofocus system does not operate when the shutter release button is pressed halfway.	
	Off (Live View only)	Only during Live View, the autofocus system does not operate when the shutter release button is pressed halfway.	

4 **Press the OK button.**

5 **Press the MENU button three times.**

The camera is ready to take a picture.

Setting the Beep, Date and Time, and Display Language

Setting the Beep

You can turn the camera operation beep on or off, or change its volume. By default, all available items are set to ☑ (On), and the volume level is set to [3].
The following items can be set.

- In-focus
- AE-L (AE Lock operation sound)
- Self-timer
- Remote Control
- Mirror Up
- One Push File Format (operation sound when [One Push File Format] is assigned to the **RAW**/**Fx** button)
- Press OK for 1 sec. (operation sound when Change AF point is enabled or disabled)

1 Select [Beep] in the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

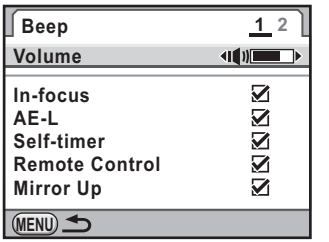
The [Beep 1] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▼) and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to adjust the volume.

Select from six levels. When set to 0, you can turn all the beeps off.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to choose an item.

Turn the rear e-dial (⟳) to display the [Beep 2] screen.



4 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.

5 Press the MENU button twice.

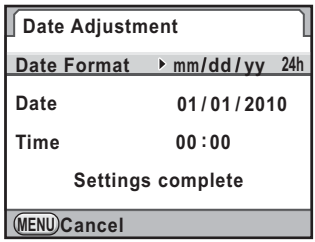
The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Changing the Date and Time Display

You can change the initial date and time settings, and set their display formats. Choose [mm/dd/yy], [dd/mm/yy] or [yy/mm/dd] for the date display format, and [12h] (12-hour display) or [24h] (24-hour display) for the time display format.

Set in [Date Adjustment] in the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu (p.278).

☞ Setting the Date and Time (p.67)



Setting the World Time

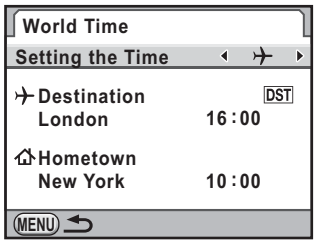
The date and time selected in “Initial Settings” (p.63) serve as the date and time of your present location.
Setting the destination in [World Time] enables you to display the local date and time on the monitor when traveling overseas.

1 Select [World Time] in the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [World Time] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ✈ (Destination) or ⌂ (Hometown) for [Setting the Time].

This setting is reflected on the date and time that appear in the guide display and control panel.



3 Press the four-way controller (▼).

The selection frame moves to ✈ (Destination setting).

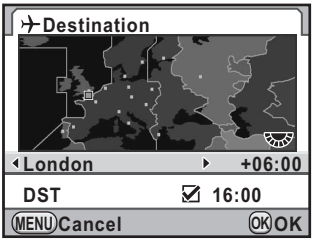
4 Press the four-way controller (▶).

The [✈ Destination] screen appears.

5 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select a destination city.

Turn the rear e-dial (🔄) to change the region.

The location, time difference and current time of the selected city appear.



6 Press the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [DST].

7 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.

Select ☑ if the destination city uses daylight saving time (DST).

8 Press the OK button.

The settings are saved and the camera returns to the [World Time] screen.

9 Press the MENU button twice.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

memo

- Refer to “List of World Time Cities” (p.291) for cities that can be selected as a destination.
- Select ⌂ (Hometown) in Step 2 to set the city and DST setting.
- ✈ appears in the guide display if [Setting the Time] is set to ✈ (Destination). (p.24)
- When you switch [Setting the Time] to ✈ (Destination), the video output (p.257) setting changes to the video output format for that city.

List of World Time Cities

Region	City
North America	Honolulu
	Anchorage
	Vancouver
	San Francisco
	Los Angeles
	Calgary
	Denver
	Chicago
	Miami
	Toronto
	New York
	Halifax
Central and South America	Mexico City
	Lima
	Santiago
	Caracas
	Buenos Aires
	Sao Paulo
	Rio de Janeiro
Europe	Lisbon
	Madrid
	London
	Paris
	Amsterdam
	Milan
	Rome
	Copenhagen
	Berlin
	Prague
	Stockholm
	Budapest
	Warsaw
	Athens
	Helsinki
	Moscow

Region	City
Africa/ West Asia	Dakar
	Algiers
	Johannesburg
	Istanbul
	Cairo
	Jerusalem
	Nairobi
	Jeddah
	Tehran
	Dubai
	Karachi
	Kabul
	Male
	Delhi
	Colombo
	Kathmandu
	Dacca
East Asia	Yangon
	Bangkok
	Kuala Lumpur
	Vientiane
	Singapore
	Phnom Penh
	Ho chi Minh
	Jakarta
	Hong Kong
	Beijing
	Shanghai
	Manila
	Taipei
	Seoul
	Tokyo
	Guam

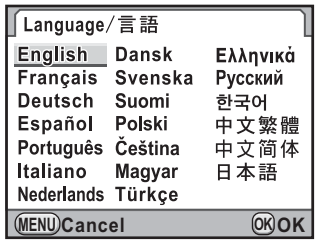
Region	City
Oceania	Perth
	Adelaide
	Sydney
	Noumea
	Wellington
	Auckland
	Pago Pago

Setting the Display Language

You can change the language in which the menus, error messages, etc. are displayed.
The camera supports the following languages: English, French, German, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch, Danish, Swedish, Finnish, Polish, Czech, Hungarian, Turkish, Greek, Russian, Korean, Traditional Chinese, Simplified Chinese and Japanese.

Set in [Language/言語] of the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu (p.278).

☞ Setting the Display Language (p.63)

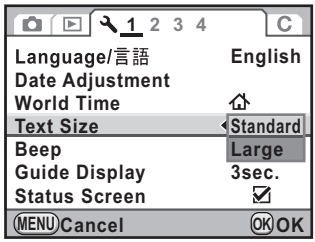


Adjusting the Monitor and the Menu Display

Setting the Text Size

You can set the text size of an item selected on the respective menu screens to [Standard] (normal display) or [Large] (magnified display).

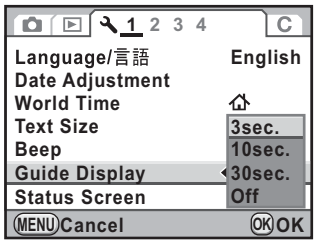
Set in [Text Size] of the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu (p.278).



Setting the Guide Display Time

Set the length of time that the guides are displayed on the monitor when the camera is turned on or the exposure mode is changed. (p.24)
Select from [3 sec.] (default setting), [10 sec.], [30 sec.] and [Off].

Set in [Guide Display] of the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu (p.278).



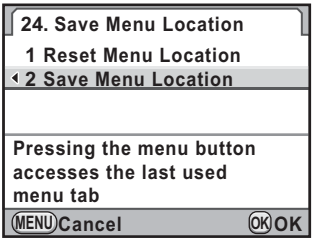
Setting the Initial Menu Tab Displayed

Set the initial menu tab displayed on the monitor when the **MENU** button is pressed.

1 Select [24. Save Menu Location] in the [C Custom Setting 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [24. Save Menu Location] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Reset Menu Location] or [Save Menu Location] and press the OK button.



1	Reset Menu Location	The [📷 Rec. Mode 1] menu ([📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu when the exposure mode is set to 🎥 (Movie), and [▶ Playback 1] menu when in Playback mode) is always displayed first. (default setting)
2	Save Menu Location	The menu tab last selected is displayed first.

3 Press the MENU button.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Setting the Status Screen Display

You can set whether to display the status screen on the monitor and set the display color of the status screen, control panel and playback mode palette.

1 Select [Status Screen] in the [🔧 Set-up 1] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Status Screen] screen appears.

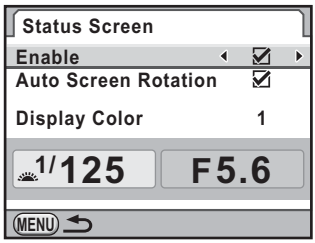
2 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.

☑	Displays the status screen. (default setting)
□	Does not display the status screen.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Auto Screen Rotation] and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.

☑	If the camera is held vertically while measuring the brightness, the status screen/control panel is displayed vertically. (default setting)
□	The status screen/control panel is always displayed horizontally.

4 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Display Color] and use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select from six display colors.



5 Press the MENU button twice.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

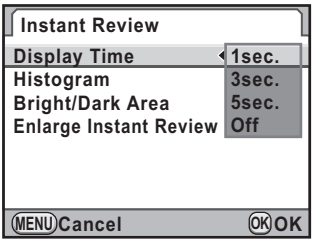
Setting the Display for Instant Review

You can set the Instant Review display settings.

1 **Select [Instant Review] in the [Rec. Mode 5] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).**

The [Instant Review] screen appears.

2 **Press the four-way controller (▶) and use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a display time.**



3 **Press the OK button.**

4 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Histogram], [Bright/Dark Area] or [Enlarge Instant Review].**

5 **Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.**

When [Enlarge Instant Review] is set to ☑ (default setting), you can magnify the image with the rear e-dial (). (p.237)

6 **Press the MENU button twice.**

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Adjusting the Brightness of the Monitor

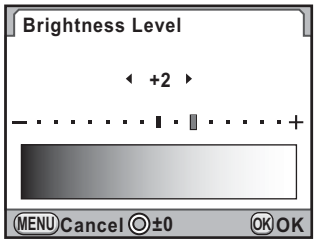
You can adjust the brightness of the monitor. Adjust the settings when the monitor is hard to see.

1 Select [Brightness Level] in the [🔧 Set-up 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Brightness Level] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to adjust the brightness.

You can select from 15 brightness levels. The value is reset to ±0 when the ⊙ button is pressed.



3 Press the OK button.

4 Press the MENU button.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Adjusting the Color of the Monitor

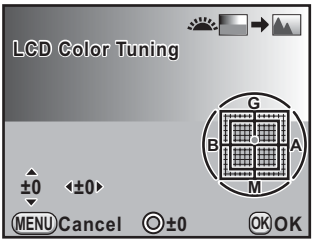
You can adjust the color of the monitor.

1 Select [LCD Color Tuning] in the [🔧 Set-up 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [LCD Color Tuning] screen appears.

2 Adjust the color.

Seven levels (225 patterns) are available on the G-M and B-A axes.



Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼)	Adjusts the tone of the colors between green (G) and magenta (M).
Four-way controller (◀▶)	Adjusts the tone of the colors between blue (B) and amber (A).
⦿ button	Resets the adjustment value.
Front e-dial (🌞)	Displays a saved image in the background so you can adjust the color while viewing the image. This is useful for matching the color of the monitor with that of a computer.

3 Press the OK button.

4 Press the MENU button.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

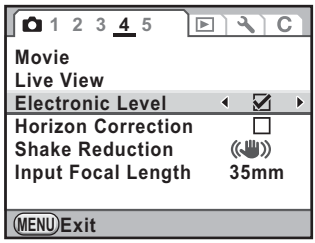
Setting the Electronic Level Display

This camera is equipped with an electronic level for detecting whether the camera is level, as indicated on the bar graph in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel and monitor. Select whether to display the bar graph.

1 Select [Electronic Level] in the [Rec. Mode 4] menu.

2 Use the four-way controller (◄►) to select ☑ or □.

☑	Displays the bar graph of the electronic level.
□	Does not display the bar graph of the electronic level. (default setting)



3 Press the MENU button.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

memo The bar graph can be displayed on the monitor when the **INFO** button is pressed in the control panel. When [Electronic Level] is assigned to the **RAW**/**Fx** button (p.285), press the **RAW**/**Fx** button while the status screen or Live View is displayed to display the electronic level. (p.168)

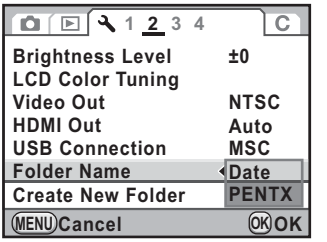
Setting the Folder/File Number

Changing the Naming System of the Folder

You can select a naming system of the folder for storing images.

Date	The two digits of the month and day on which the picture was taken are assigned as the folder name in the form of [xxx_MMDD]. [xxx] is a sequential number from 100 to 999. [MMDD] (month and day) appears according to the display style set in [Date Adjustment] (p.289). (default setting) Example) 101_0125: Folder for images taken on January 25th
PENTX	The folder name is assigned in the form of [xxxPENTX]. Example) 101PENTX

Set in [Folder Name] in the [🔧 Set-up 2] menu (p.279).



Creating New Folders

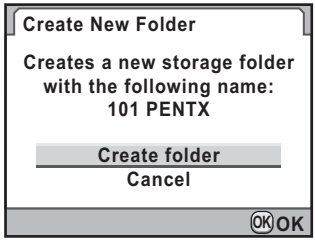
Creates a new folder on an SD Memory Card. A folder is created with the number following the number of the folder currently being used.

1 Select [Create New Folder] in the [🔧 Set-up 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Create New Folder] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Create folder] and press the OK button.

A folder with a new number is created.



memo Only one folder can be created using this operation. Multiple empty folders cannot be created consecutively.

Selecting the File Number Setting

You can select a method for assigning the file number of an image when saved to a new folder. Set in [File No.] of [Memory] (p.312) in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu.

☑	The file number of the last image saved to the previous folder is saved and subsequent images are assigned sequential file numbers even if a new folder is created.
□	The file number of the first image saved to a folder returns to 0001 each time a new folder is created for saving images.

memo When the number of storable images exceeds 500, captured images are divided into folders of 500 images each. However, in Auto Bracketing shooting, images will be stored in the same folder until shooting is completed, even if the number of images exceeds 500.

Setting the File Name

You can change the file names of images.
The default naming conventions are as follows depending on the [Color Space] (p.212) setting in the [📷 Rec. Mode 3] menu.
"xxxx" indicates the file number. This is displayed as a four-digit sequential number. (p.301)

Color Space	File Name
sRGB	IMGPxxxx.JPG
AdobeRGB	_IGPxxxx.JPG

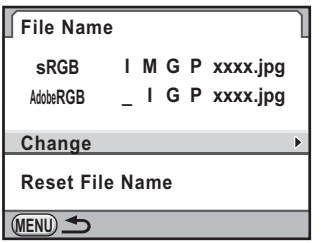
For sRGB, you can change [IMGP] (4 characters) to the desired characters.
For AdobeRGB, of the 4 characters you selected, the first 3 are assigned in place of [IGP].
Example: When set to [ABCDxxxx.JPG], files are named [_ABCxxxx.JPG] for AdobeRGB.

1 **Select [File Name] in the [🔧 Set-up 3] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).**

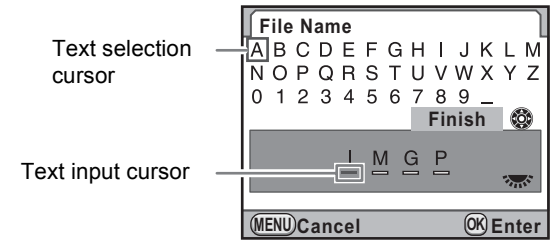
The [File Name] screen appears.

2 **Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Change] and press the four-way controller (▶).**

The text-entry screen appears.



3 Change the text.



Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Moves the text selection cursor.
Rear e-dial (⟳)	Moves the text input cursor.
OK button	Enters a character selected with the text selection cursor at the position of the text input cursor.

4 After entering the text, move the text selection cursor to [Finish] and press the OK button.

The file name is changed.

5 Press the MENU button twice.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Resetting the File Name

You can reset a changed file name to its default setting.

1 Select [Reset File Name] in Step 2 on p.302 and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Reset File Name] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Reset] and press the OK button.

The file name is reset.

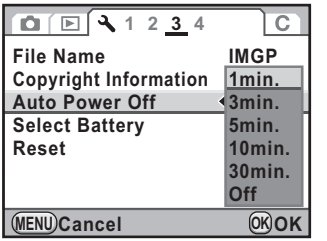
3 Press the MENU button twice.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Setting the Auto Power Off Function

You can set the camera to turn off automatically if unused after a certain length of time. Select from [1min.] (default setting), [3min.], [5min.], [10min.], [30min.] or [Off].

Set in [Auto Power Off] of the [🔧 Set-up 3] menu (p.279).



memo

- The Auto Power Off function does not work in the following situations.
  - when the Live View image is displayed
  - when the slideshow is played back
  - when the camera is connected to a computer with an USB cable
- If the camera turns off after the set length of time, perform one of the following operations to reactivate it.
  - Turn on the camera again.
  - Press the shutter release button halfway.
  - Press the ▶ button, **MENU** button or **INFO** button.

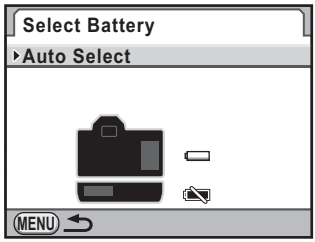
Selecting a Battery

You can set the battery priority to the camera or the battery grip when the optional battery grip D-BG4 (p.345) is attached.

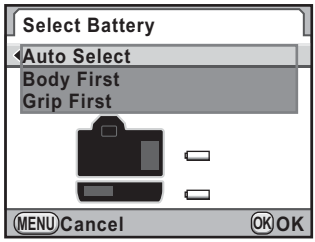
1 Select [Select Battery] in the [🔧 Set-up 3] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Select Battery] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▶).

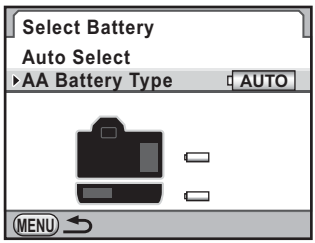


3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select a battery to be prioritized and press the OK button.



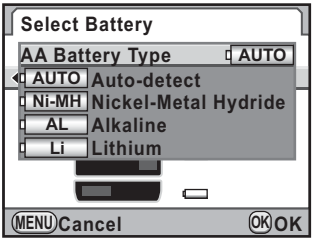
Auto Select	Priority is given to the battery with the most remaining power. (default setting)
Body First/ Grip First	Priority is given to the selected battery.

4 When using AA batteries in the battery grip, use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [AA Battery Type] and press the four-way controller (▶).



5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the AA battery type and press the OK button.

When set to [Auto-detect], the camera will automatically detect the type of batteries being used.



6 Press the MENU button twice.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

memo

- If batteries are inserted into both the body and grip, the battery levels of both are checked when the power is turned on. Regardless of the [Select Battery] setting, both batteries are slightly used.
- When the currently selected battery runs out as a result of the check, the message [Battery depleted] appears on the monitor. Turn the camera off and on again, and the camera will switch to the remaining battery.
- You can check the battery usage condition on the status screen and LCD panel. (p.52)

Caution

When the type of AA batteries inserted in the battery grip differs from the battery type setting in Step 5, the battery level will not be correctly determined. Please set the correct battery type. Usually, there is no problem using [Auto-detect]. However in low temperatures and when using batteries that were stored for long periods of time, set the appropriate battery type so the camera can correctly determine the remaining battery level.

Setting the Photographer Information

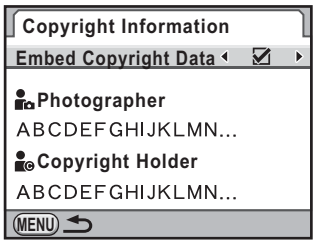
The camera type, shooting conditions and other information are automatically embedded in captured images in the Exif data format. You can embed photographer information in this Exif.

memo Use the provided “PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4” software (p.322) to check the Exif information.

1 Select [Copyright Information] in the [🔧 Set-up 3] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Copyright Information] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.



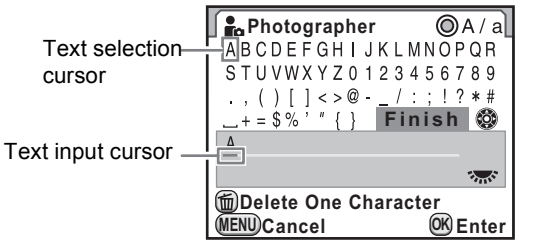
☑	Embeds copyright information in the Exif.
□	Does not embed copyright information in the Exif. (default setting)

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Photographer] and press the four-way controller (▶).

The text-entry screen appears.

4 Enter the text.

Up to 32 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols can be entered.

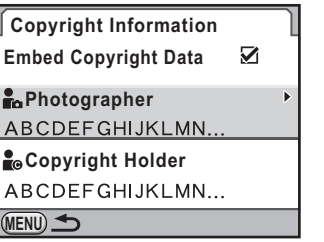


Available operations

Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶)	Moves the text selection cursor.
Rear e-dial ( )	Moves the text input cursor.
⊛ button	Switches between upper and lower case letters.
OK button	Enters a character selected with the text selection cursor at the position of the text input cursor.
🗑 button	Deletes a character at the position of the text input cursor.

5 After entering the text, move the text selection cursor to [Finish] and press the OK button.

The camera returns to the [Copyright Information] screen.



6 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Copyright Holder] and enter the text in the same way as [Photographer].

7 Press the MENU button twice.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

Setting the DPOF Settings

You can order conventional photograph prints by taking the SD Memory Card with recorded images to a store for printing.
DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings allow you to specify the number of copies and whether to imprint the date.

- DPOF settings cannot be applied to RAW images.
- You can make DPOF settings for up to 999 images.

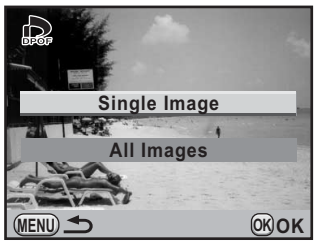
1 Press the four-way controller (▼) in Playback mode.

The playback mode palette appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼◄►) to select (DPOF) and press the OK button.

The screen to select how to change the settings is displayed.

3 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [Single Image] or [All Images] and press the OK button.



4 When [Single Image] is selected in Step 3, use the four-way controller (◄►) to select an image to set DPOF settings.

5 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select the number of copies.

You can set up to 99 copies.

appears at the top right of the screen for images with DPOF settings.

To cancel the DPOF settings, set the number of copies to [00].

6 Turn the rear e-dial ( ) to select ☑ or □ for printing the date.

☑	The date will be printed.
□	The date will not be printed.

Repeat Steps 4 to 6 to make DPOF settings for other images (up to 999).

7 Press the OK button.

The DPOF settings for the selected image is saved and the camera returns to Playback mode.

Caution

- Depending on the printer or printing equipment at the photo processing lab, the date may not be printed on the pictures even if the date for DPOF setting is set to ☑.
- The number of copies specified in the All Images setting applies to all the images, and that specified in the Single Image setting is canceled. Before printing, check that the specified number is correct.

Correcting Defective Pixels in the CMOS Sensor (Pixel Mapping)

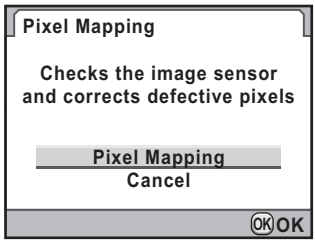
Pixel Mapping is a function for mapping out and correcting defective pixels in the CMOS sensor.

1 Select [Pixel Mapping] in the [🔧 Set-up 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Pixel Mapping] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Pixel Mapping] and press the OK button.

Defective pixels are mapped and corrected, and the screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.



Caution When the battery level is low, the message [Not enough battery power remaining to activate Pixel Mapping] is displayed on the monitor. Use the AC adapter kit K-AC50 (optional) or change to the battery with ample power remaining.

Selecting Settings to Save in the Camera (Memory)

You can select which function settings to save when the camera is turned off. The following function settings can be saved.

Function	Default Setting
Flash Mode	☑
Drive Mode	☑
White Balance	☑
Custom Image	☑
Sensitivity	☑
EV Compensation	☑
Flash Exposure Comp.	☑

Function	Default Setting
Cross Processing	□
Extended Bracketing	☑
Digital Filter	□
HDR Capture	□
Playback Info Display	☑
File No.	☑

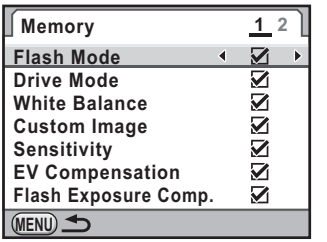
Caution [Memory] cannot be selected when the mode dial is set to **USER**.

1 Select [Memory] in the [📷 Rec. Mode 5] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Memory 1] screen appears.

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to choose an item.

Turn the rear e-dial (🔄) to display the [Memory 2] screen.



3 Use the four-way controller (◀▶) to select ☑ or □.

☑	Settings are saved even when the camera is turned off.
□	Settings are cleared and returned to their default values when the camera is turned off.

4 Press the MENU button twice.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

- Set [File No.] to ☑ (On) to continue the sequential numbering for the file name even if a new folder is created. Refer to “Selecting the File Number Setting” (p.301).
- When the [🔧 Set-up] menu is reset (p.335), all Memory settings return to the default values.

Memo

10 Connecting to a Computer

This chapter explains how to connect the camera to your computer, install the supplied CD-ROM, etc.

Manipulating Captured Images on a Computer 316

Saving Images on Your Computer 317

Using the Provided Software 320

Manipulating Captured Images on a Computer

The captured still pictures and movies can be transferred to a computer by connecting the K-5 using a USB cable and can be managed using the provided software.
We recommend the following system requirements to connect your camera to a computer or to use the software “PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4” included on the CD-ROM (S-SW110).

● **Windows**

OS	Windows XP (SP3 or later), Windows Vista, or Windows 7 (can be run as a 32-bit application on any x64 Edition of Windows.)
CPU	Pentium D 3.0 GHz equivalent or higher (Intel Core 2 Duo processor 2.0 GHz equivalent or higher recommended)
RAM	2.0 GB or more (3.0 GB or more recommended)
Free Disk Space	1 GB or more (8 GB or more recommended)
Monitor	1280×800 pixels or more (1920×1200 or more recommended) with 24-bit full color (approximately 16.77 million colors)
Others	USB 2.0 port must be standard equipment

● **Macintosh**

OS	Mac OS X 10.4.11, 10.5, or 10.6
CPU	PowerPC G5 Dual-core 2.0 GHz or higher (Intel Core 2 Duo processor 2.0 GHz or higher recommended. Universal Binary format.)
RAM	2.0 GB minimum (4.0 GB or more recommended)
Free Disk Space	1 GB minimum (8 GB or more recommended)
Monitor	1280×800 pixels or more (1920×1200 or more recommended) with 24-bit full color (approximately 16.77 million colors)
Others	USB 2.0 port must be standard equipment

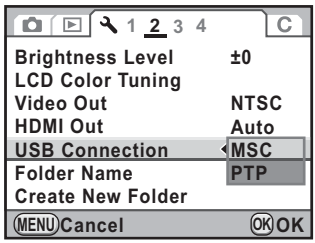
Setting the USB Connection Mode

Set the USB connection mode when connecting to a computer via the provided USB cable (I-USB7). The default setting is [MSC].

1 Select [USB Connection] in the [🔧 Set-up 2] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

2 Use the four-way controller (▲▼) to select [MSC] or [PTP].

Refer to p.318 for details.



3 Press the OK button.

The setting is changed.

4 Press the MENU button.

The screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.

MSC and PTP

MSC (Mass Storage Class)
A general-purpose driver program that handles devices connected to the computer via USB as a memory device. Also indicates a standard for controlling USB devices with this driver.
By simply connecting a device that supports USB Mass Storage Class, you can copy, read, and write files from a computer without installing a dedicated driver.

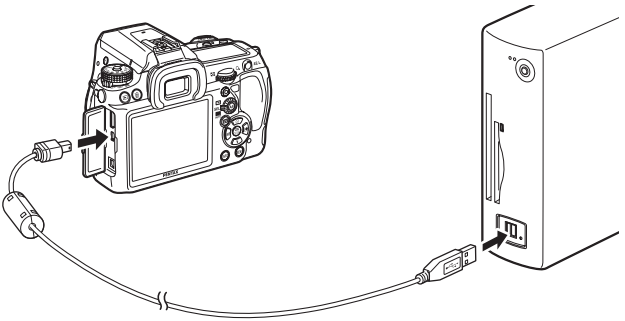
PTP (Picture Transfer Protocol)
A protocol that allows transfer of digital images and control of digital cameras via USB, standardized as ISO 15740.
You can transfer image data between devices that support PTP without installing a device driver.

Unless otherwise specified, select MSC when connecting the K-5 to your computer.

Saving Images by Connecting Your Camera and Your Computer

1 **Turn your computer on.**

2 **Turn off your camera and use the provided USB cable to connect your camera and your computer.**



3 Turn your camera on.

The camera is recognized as a removable disk or an SD Memory Card with a volume label “K-5”.

If the “K-5” dialog appears when the camera is turned on, select [Open folder to view files using Windows Explorer] and click the OK button.

4 Save the captured images to your computer.

Drag and drop the image file(s) or the folder containing the image files in your camera to the hard disk of your computer or the desktop.

5 Disconnect your camera from your computer.

Using the Provided Software

"PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4" is included on the CD-ROM (S-SW110). Using the PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4, you can manage images saved on your computer, and develop RAW files taken with the K-5 and adjust the color of the images.

Compatible file formats: .bmp (BMP)/.jpg (JPEG)/.pef (files recorded in PENTAX's original RAW format)/.png (PNG)/.tif (TIFF)/.dng (DNG format RAW file)

Installing the Software

You can install the software from the provided CD-ROM.
When multiple accounts have been setup on your computer, log on with an account that has administrative rights before installing the software.

1 Turn your computer on.

Make sure no other software is running.

2 Place the CD-ROM (S-SW110) into the CD-ROM drive on your computer.

The [PENTAX Software Installer] screen appears.

If the [PENTAX Software Installer] screen does not appear

- **For Windows**
  1 Click [My Computer] from the Start menu.
  2 Double-click the [CD-ROM drive (S-SW110)] icon.
  3 Double-click the [Setup.exe] icon.
- **For Macintosh**
  1 Double-click the CD-ROM (S-SW110) icon on the desktop.
  2 Double-click the [PENTAX Installer] icon.

3 Click [PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4].

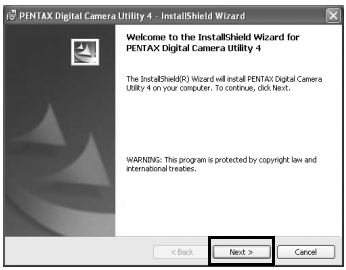
For Windows, proceed to Step 4.

For Macintosh, follow the instructions on the screen to perform subsequent steps.

4 Select the desired language in the [Choose Setup Language] screen and click [OK].

5 When the [InstallShield Wizard] screen appears in the selected language, click [Next].

Follow the instructions on the screen to perform subsequent steps.



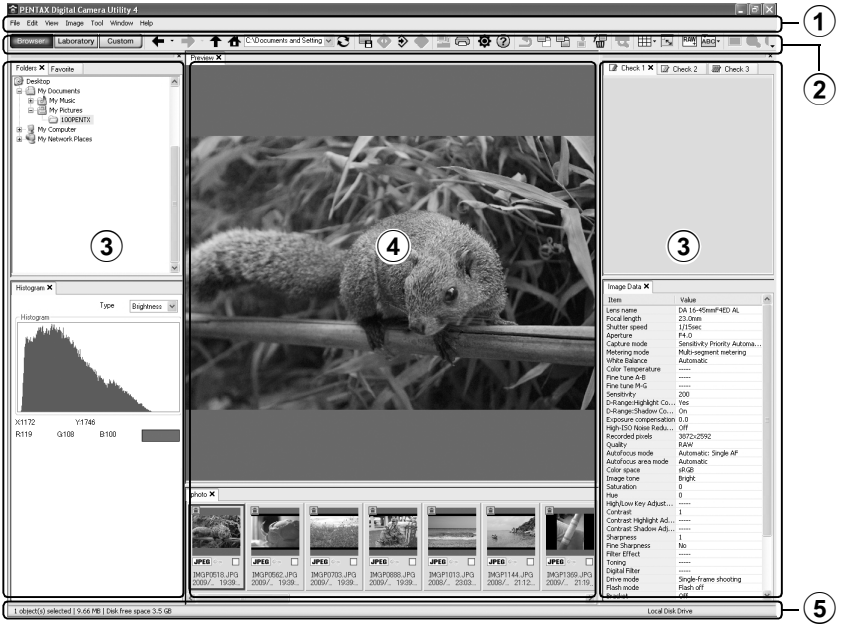
Screens of the PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4

When PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4 is launched, the following screen (browser) appears.

memo The screenshots used in this explanation are for Windows.

- **Browser tab set (default setting)**

  You can perform the file management functions such as viewing and organizing the images.



①Menu Bar

This executes functions or makes various settings.
For Macintosh, the Menu bar appears at the top of the desktop.

②Tool Bar

Frequently used functions are provided as Tool bar buttons.

③Control Panel

Shooting information and settings of the selected image appear in this panel. The set of tab pages displayed in Control Panel can be changed by pressing the Browser, Laboratory and Custom buttons on the Tool bar.

④File Display Pane

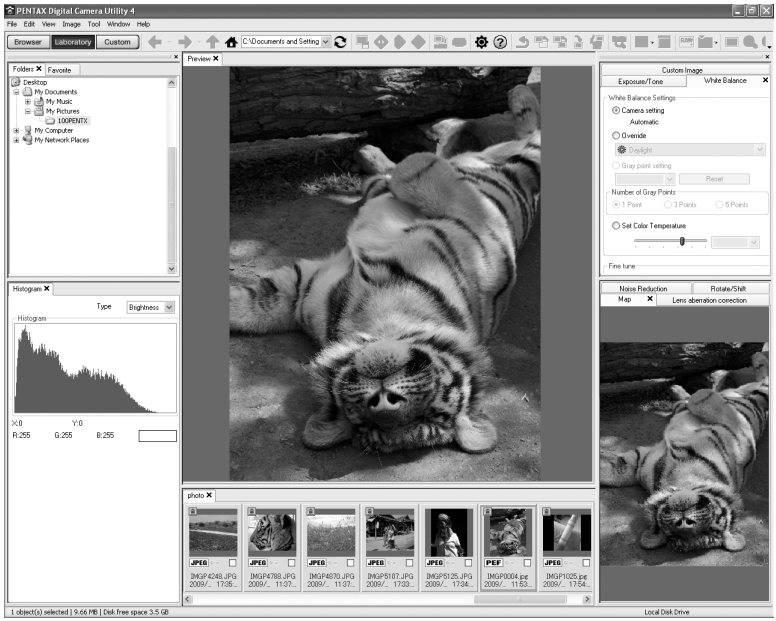
The file list and the images in the selected folder appear here.

⑤Status Bar

Information on the selected item appears.

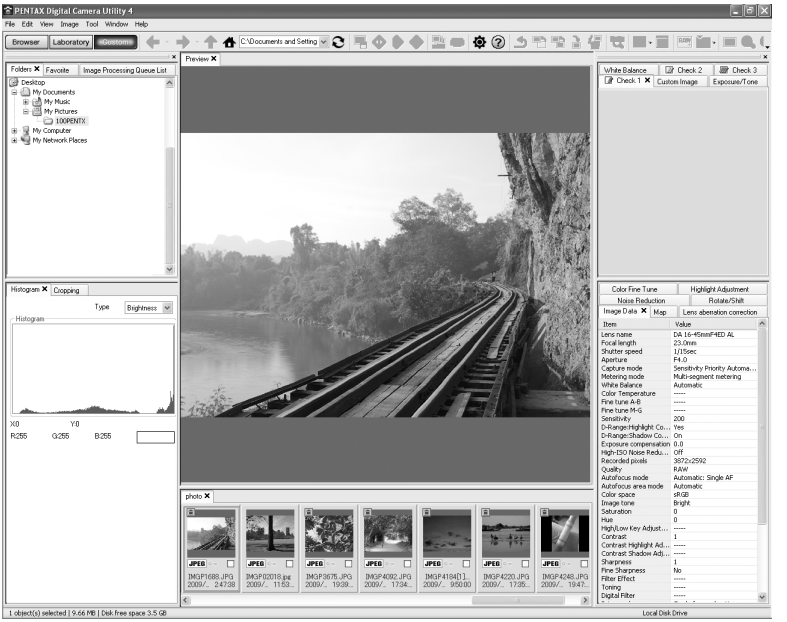
- **Laboratory tab set (default setting)**

The control panel for adjusting the image appears here.



● **Custom tab set (default setting)**

The screen display can be customized here.
The Custom tab pages enable you to customize whether to show/hide the various tab pages in accordance with your needs. By default, all tab pages are displayed.

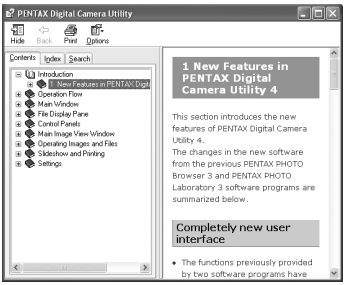


Viewing Detailed Information on the Software

Refer to Help for details on using the software program.

1 Click the ? button on the Tool bar.

Or, select [PENTAX Digital Camera Utility Help] from the [Help] menu.



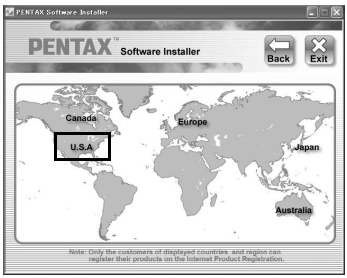
Regarding Product Registration

To better serve you, please take a moment to register your software.

Click [Product Registration] on the screen in Step 3 on p.321.

A world map for Internet Product Registration is displayed. If your computer is connected to the Internet, click the displayed country or region and then follow the instructions to register your software.

Note that you can only register online if your country or area is shown.



Memo

11 Appendix

Default Settings 328
Resetting the Menus 335
Functions Available with Various Lens Combinations 337
Cleaning the CMOS Sensor 340
Optional Accessories 345
Error Messages 351
Troubleshooting 354
Main Specifications 356
Glossary 362
Index 367
WARRANTY POLICY 373

Default Settings

The table below shows the factory default settings.
The functions set in Memory (p.312) are saved even when the camera is turned off.

Reset Setting
Yes: The setting returns to the default setting with the reset function (p.335).
No : The setting is saved even after reset.

Direct Keys

Item	Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
Drive Mode	☐ (Single Frame Shooting)	Yes	p.151 p.143 p.145 p.157 p.149
Flash Mode	Depends on the capture mode	Yes	p.77
White Balance	**AWB** (Auto)	Yes	p.205
Custom Image	Bright	Yes	p.222

[📷 Rec. Mode] Menu

Item		Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
USER Mode *1		USER1	Yes	p.230
Exposure Mode *1		**P** (Hyper-program)	Yes	p.230
File Format		JPEG	Yes	p.202
JPEG Recorded Pixels		16M (4928×3264)	Yes	p.200
JPEG Quality		★★★ (Best)	Yes	p.201
AUTO AF Point Setting		11 AF Points	Yes	p.127
Lens Correction	Distortion Correction	Off	Yes	p.218
	Lat-Chromatic-Ab Adj	Off	Yes	
Cross Processing		Off	Yes	p.225

Item		Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
Extended Bracketing	Type	Off	Yes	p.160
	Bracketing Amount	BA±1 (White Balance)/ ±1 (other than White Balance)	Yes	
Digital Filter		Not use any filters	Yes	p.162
HDR Capture	HDR Capture	Off	Yes	p.215
	Auto Align	□ (Off)	Yes	
Multi-exposure	Number of Shots	2 times	Yes	p.155
	Auto EV Adjustment	□ (Off)	Yes	
Interval Shooting	Interval	1 sec.	Yes	p.152
	Number of Shots	2 images	Yes	
	Start Interval	Now	Yes	
	Start Time	12:00AM / 00:00	Yes	
Composition Adjust.	X-Y direction	Center	Yes	p.220
	Rotation	±0°	Yes	
	Recall Previous Position	□ (Off)	Yes	
D-Range Setting	Highlight Correction	Off	Yes	p.214
	Shadow Correction	Off	Yes	
ISO AUTO Setting	Sensitivity limit	100 – 3200	Yes	p.96
	AUTO ISO Parameters	(Standard)	Yes	
High-ISO NR		Auto	Yes	p.98
Slow Shutter Speed NR		Auto	Yes	p.99
Program Line		Normal (Normal)	Yes	p.102
Color Space		sRGB	Yes	p.212
RAW File Format		PEF	Yes	p.203
Movie	Recorded Pixels	HD (1280×720, 16:9, 30 fps)	Yes	p.171
	Quality Level	★★★ (Best)	Yes	
	Sound	(On)	Yes	
	Cross Processing	Off	Yes	
	Digital Filter	Not use any filters	Yes	
	Movie Aperture Control	Fixed	Yes	
	Shake Reduction	(Off)	Yes	

Item		Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
Live View	Autofocus Method	(Face Detection AF)	Yes	p.166
	Show Grid	Off	Yes	
	Info Overlay	☑ (On)	Yes	
	Histogram	☐ (Off)	Yes	
	Bright/Dark Area	☐ (Off)	Yes	
Electronic Level		☐ (Off)	Yes	p.299
Horizon Correction		☐ (Off)	Yes	p.140
Shake Reduction		(On)	Yes	p.140
Input Focal Length		35 mm	Yes	p.142
Instant Review	Display Time	1 sec.	Yes	p.296
	Histogram	☐ (Off)	Yes	
	Bright/Dark Area	☐ (Off)	Yes	
	Enlarge Instant Review	☑ (On)	Yes	
Digital Preview	Histogram	☐ (Off)	Yes	p.136
	Bright/Dark Area	☐ (Off)	Yes	
	Enlarge Instant Review	☑ (On)	Yes	
E-Dial Programming	**P**	Tv, Av, ⊙→**P**	Yes	p.282
	Sv	–, ISO, ⊙–		
	Tv	Tv, –, ⊙–		
	Av	–, Av, ⊙–		
	TAv/M	Tv, Av, ⊙ **P** LINE		
	B	–, Av, ⊙–		
	X	–, Av, ⊙–		
		–, Av, ⊙ **Av** SHIFT		
Button Customization	**RAW/Fx** Button	One Push File Format	Yes	p.285
	AF Button	Enable AF		
	Preview Dial	Optical Preview		
	Shutter Button Half Press	Enable AF		

Item		Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
Memory	Cross Processing, Digital Filter, HDR Capture	☐ (Off)	Yes	p.312
	Other than the above functions	☑ (On)	Yes	
Save USER Mode		–	Yes*2	p.227

*1 Appears only when the mode dial is set to **USER**.

*2 The saved settings are reset only with [Reset USER Mode] in the [Save USER Mode] screen.

Playback Mode Palette

Item	Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
Image Rotation	–	–	p.249
Digital Filter	Toy Camera	Yes*3	p.265
Resize	Maximum size according to the setting	–	p.262
Cropping	Maximum size according to the setting	–	p.263
Slideshow	–	–	p.246
Save as Manual WB	–	–	p.213
RAW Development	File Format: JPEG Recorded Pixels: 16M Quality Level: ★★★	Yes	p.271
Index	–	–	p.243
Image Comparison	–	–	p.241
Movie Editing	–	–	p.179
Protect	–	No	p.254
DPOF	–	No	p.309

*3 The parameters specified in [Digital Filter] are also reset.

[▶ Playback] Menu

Item		Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
Slideshow	Interval	3 sec.	Yes	p.246
	Screen Effect	Off	Yes	
	Repeat Playback	☐ (Off)	Yes	
Quick Zoom		Off	Yes	p.236
Bright/Dark Area		☐ (Off)	Yes	
Auto Image Rotation		☑ (On)	Yes	
Delete All Images		–	–	p.253

[🔧 Set-up] Menu

Item		Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
Language/言語		According to default setting	No	p.292
Date Adjustment		According to default setting	No	p.289
World Time	Setting the Time	⌂ (Hometown)	Yes	p.289
	Destination (City)	Same as Hometown	No	
	Destination (DST)	Same as Hometown	No	
	Hometown (City)	According to default setting	No	
	Hometown (DST)	According to default setting	No	
Text Size		According to default setting	No	p.293
Beep	Volume	3	Yes	p.288
	Setting	All ☑ (On)		
Guide Display		3 sec.	Yes	p.293
Status Screen	Status Screen	☑ (On)	Yes	p.295
	Auto Screen Rotation	☑ (On)	Yes	
	Display Color	1	Yes	
Brightness Level		±0	Yes	p.297
LCD Color Tuning		±0	Yes	p.298
Video Out		According to default setting	No	p.257
HDMI Out		Auto	Yes	p.259
USB Connection		MSC	Yes	p.317
Folder Name		Date	Yes	p.300

Item		Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
Create New Folder		–	–	p.300
File Name		IMGP/_IGP	No*4	p.302
Copyright Information	Embed Copyright Data	□ (Off)	No	p.307
	Photographer	–		
	Copyright Holder	–		
Auto Power Off		1 min.	Yes	p.304
Select Battery	Select Battery	Auto Select	Yes	p.305
	AA Battery Type	Auto-detect	Yes	
Reset		–	–	p.335
Pixel Mapping		–	–	p.311
Dust Alert		–	–	p.341
Dust Removal	Dust Removal	–	–	p.340
	Start-up Action	☑ (On)	Yes	
Sensor Cleaning		–	–	p.343
Format		–	–	p.281

*4 The setting can be reset only with [Reset File Name] in the [File Name] screen.

[C Custom Setting] Menu

Item	Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
1. EV Steps	1/3 EV Steps	Yes	p.120
2. Sensitivity Steps	1 EV Step	Yes	p.95
3. Expanded Sensitivity	Off	Yes	p.95
4. Meter Operating Time	10 sec.	Yes	p.118
5. AE-L with AF Locked	Off	Yes	p.131
6. Link AE to AF Point	Off	Yes	p.118
7. Auto EV Compensation	Off	Yes	–
8. Auto Bracketing Order	0 - +	Yes	p.157
9. One-Push Bracketing	Off	Yes	p.159
10. WB Adjustable Range	Auto Adjustment	Yes	p.206
11. WB When Using Flash	Auto White Balance	Yes	p.206
12. AWB in Tungsten Light	Subtle Correction	Yes	–
13. Color Temperature Steps	Kelvin	Yes	p.210

Item	Default Setting	Reset Setting	Page
14. Superimpose AF Area	On	Yes	p.128
15. AF.S Setting	Focus-priority	Yes	p.123
16. AF.C Setting	Focus-priority	Yes	p.123
17. AF Assist Light	On	Yes	p.124
18. AF with Remote Control	Off	Yes	p.148
19. Remote Control in Bulb	Mode1	Yes	p.116
20. Release While Charging	Off	Yes	p.82
21. Flash in Wireless Mode	On	Yes	p.191
22. LCD Panel Illumination	High	Yes	p.37
23. Saving Rotation Info	On	Yes	p.249
24. Save Menu Location	Reset Menu Location	Yes	p.294
25. Catch-in Focus	Off	Yes	p.134
26. AF Fine Adjustment	Off	Yes *5	p.126
27. Using Aperture Ring	Prohibited	Yes	p.339
Reset Custom Functions	–	–	p.336

*5 The saved adjustment value is reset only with [Reset] in the [26. AF Fine Adjustment] screen.

Resetting the Rec. Mode/Playback/Set-up Menus

Settings in the [📷 Rec. Mode] menu, [▶ Playback] menu, [🔧 Set-up] menu, direct keys and playback mode palette can be reset to default settings.

memo Language/言語, Date Adjustment, the city and DST settings for World Time, Text Size, Video Output, Copyright Information and [C Custom Setting] menu settings are not reset.

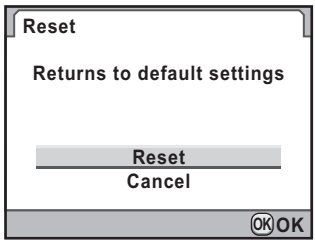
Caution [Reset] cannot be selected when the mode dial is set to **USER**.

1 Select [Reset] in the [🔧 Set-up 3] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Reset] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Reset] and press the OK button.

The settings are reset, and the screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.



Resetting the Custom Menu

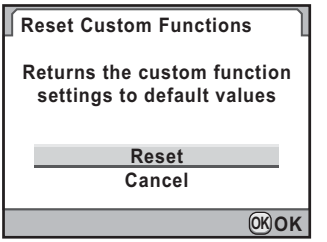
Reset settings in [**C** Custom Setting] menu to default values.

1 Select [Reset Custom Functions] in the [C Custom Setting 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Reset Custom Functions] screen appears.

2 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Reset] and press the OK button.

The settings are reset, and the screen that was displayed before selecting the menu appears again.



Functions Available with Various Lens Combinations

Only DA, DA L and FA J lenses and D FA/FA/F/A lenses which have an **A** (Auto) position on the aperture ring can be used with factory default settings. Refer to "Notes on [27. Using Aperture Ring]" (p.339) for other lenses and D FA/FA/F/A lenses with aperture ring set to a position other than **A**.

✓: Functions are available when the aperture ring is set to the **A** position.
#: Some functions are restricted.
×: Functions are unavailable.

Function \ Lens [Mount type]	DA DA L D FA	FA J FA *6	F *6	A	M P
	[KAF] [KAF2] [KAF3]	[KAF] [KAF2]	[KAF]	[KA]	[K]
Autofocus (Lens only) (With AF adapter 1.7×)*1	✓ –	✓ –	✓ –	– #*9	– #*9
Manual focus (With the focus indicator)*2 (With matte field)	✓ ✓	✓ ✓	✓ ✓	✓ ✓	✓ ✓
Quick-Shift Focus System	#*5	×	×	×	×
Eleven AF points/Five AF points	✓	✓	✓	#*9	×
Multi-segment metering	✓	✓	✓	✓	×
P (Hyper-program) mode	✓	✓	✓	✓	#*10
Sv (Sensitivity Priority) mode	✓	✓	✓	✓	#*10
Tv (Shutter Priority) mode	✓	✓	✓	✓	#*10
Av (Aperture Priority) mode	✓	✓	✓	✓	#*10
TAv (Shutter & Aperture Priority) mode	✓	✓	✓	✓	#*10
M (Hyper-manual) mode	✓	✓	✓	✓	#
P-TTL Auto Flash *3	✓	✓	✓	✓	×
Power Zoom	–	✓*7	–	–	–
Automatically obtaining the lens focal length information when using the Shake Reduction function	✓	✓	✓	×	×
Lens Correction function *4	✓	×*8	×	×	×

*1 Lenses with a maximum aperture of F2.8 or faster. Only available at the **A** position.
*2 Lenses with a maximum aperture of F5.6 or faster.
*3 When using the built-in flash and AF540FGZ, AF360FGZ, AF200FG or AF160FC.
*4 Aberration correction is available in [Lens Correction] of the [📷 Rec. Mode 1] menu. The [Distortion Correction] setting is disabled when using the DA 10-17mm FISH-EYE lens.
*5 Only available with compatible lenses.
*6 To use an FA/F SOFT 85 mm F2.8 lens or FA SOFT 28 mm F2.8 lens, set [27. Using Aperture Ring] to [Permitted] in the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu. Pictures can be taken with the aperture you set, but only within manual aperture range.
*7 Only available with KAF2 mount FA lenses.
*8 Only available with compatible lenses (FA 31mm F1.8 Limited, FA 43mm F1.9 Limited, or FA 77mm F1.8 Limited).
*9 The focusing area is fixed to ⊡ (Center).
*10 **Av** (Aperture Priority) Automatic Exposure with the aperture open. (Adjusting the aperture ring has no effect on the actual aperture value.)

Lens Names and Mount Names

DA lenses with an ultrasonic motor and FA zoom lenses with power zoom use the KAF2 mount. DA lenses with an ultrasonic motor and no AF coupler use the KAF3 mount.
FA single focal length lenses (non-zoom lenses), DA or DA L lenses without an ultrasonic motor and D FA, FA J and F lenses use the KAF mount.
Refer to respective lens manuals for details.

Lenses and Accessories that Cannot be Used with this Camera

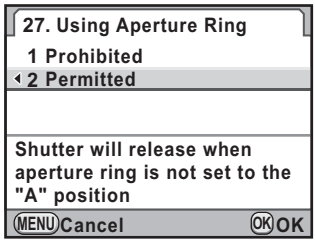
When the aperture ring is set to other than the **A** (Auto) position or a lens without an **A** position or accessories such as an auto extension tube or auto bellows are used, the camera will not operate unless [27. Using Aperture Ring] is set to [Permitted] in the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu. Refer to “Notes on [27. Using Aperture Ring]” (p.339) for restrictions that apply.
All camera exposure modes are available when using DA/DA L/FA J or lenses with an **A** position set to the **A** position.

Lens and Built-in Flash

The built-in flash cannot be regulated and fully discharges when A lenses not set to the **A** (Auto) position, pre A lenses or soft focus lenses are used. Note that the built-in flash cannot be used as an Auto Flash.

Notes on [27. Using Aperture Ring]

When [27. Using Aperture Ring] is set to [Permitted] in the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu, the shutter can be released even if the aperture ring of the D FA, FA, F or A lens is not set to the **A** (Auto) position or a lens without an **A** position is attached. However, some features will be restricted as shown below.



Restrictions on using lenses with aperture ring set to a position other than A

Lens Used	Exposure Mode	Restriction
D FA, FA, F, A, M (lens only or with auto diaphragm accessories such as auto extension tube K)	**Av** (Aperture Priority)	The aperture remains open regardless of the aperture ring position. The shutter speed changes in relation to the open aperture but an exposure error may occur. In the viewfinder, [F--] appears for the aperture indicator.
D FA, FA, F, A, M, S (with diaphragm accessories such as extension tube K)	**Av** (Aperture Priority)	Pictures can be taken with a specified aperture value but an exposure error may occur. In the viewfinder, [F--] appears for the aperture indicator.
Manual diaphragm lens such as reflex lens (lens only)	**Av** (Aperture Priority)	
FA, F SOFT 85mm, FA SOFT 28mm (lens only)	**Av** (Aperture Priority)	Pictures can be taken with a specified aperture value in the manual aperture range. In the viewfinder, [F--] appears for the aperture indicator. When the depth of field is checked (Optical Preview), exposure metering starts and the exposure can be checked.
All lenses	**M** (Hyper-manual)	Pictures can be taken with a set aperture value and shutter speed. In the viewfinder, [F--] appears for the aperture indicator. When the depth of field is checked (Optical Preview), exposure metering starts and the exposure can be checked.

memo The camera operates in **Av** (Aperture Priority) mode even if the mode dial is at ■, **P**, **Sv**, **Tv** or **TAv** when the aperture is set to other than the **A** position.

Cleaning the CMOS Sensor

If the CMOS sensor becomes dirty or dusty, shadows may appear in the image in certain situations such as when shooting against a white background. This indicates that the CMOS sensor must be cleaned.

Removing Dust with Ultrasonic Vibrations (Dust Removal)

Dust adhering to the CMOS sensor is removed by applying ultrasonic vibrations to the filter on the front surface of the CMOS sensor for approximately one second.

1 Select [Dust Removal] in the [🔧 Set-up 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

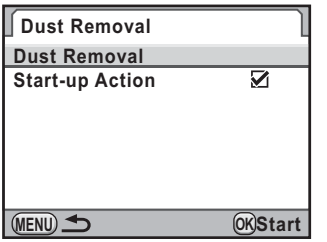
The [Dust Removal] screen appears.

2 Press the OK button.

The Dust Removal function is activated.

Set [Start-up Action] to ☑ (On) to turn the Dust Removal function on every time the camera is turned on.

When Dust Removal is completed, the camera returns to the [🔧 Set-up 4] menu.



Detecting Dust on the CMOS Sensor (Dust Alert)

Dust Alert is a function that detects dust adhering to the CMOS sensor and visually displays the location of the dust.
You can save an image indicating the dust location and display it when performing sensor cleaning (p.343).
The following conditions must be met before using the Dust Alert function:

- A DA, DA L, FA J lens or a D FA, FA or F lens that has an **A** (Auto) position is attached.
- The aperture is set to the **A** position when using a lens with an aperture ring.
- The mode dial is set to any mode other than 🎥 (Movie).
- The focus mode lever is set to **AF.S** or **C**.

Caution

- The exposure time may be extremely long when using the Dust Alert function. Note that if the direction of the lens is changed before processing is complete, dust will not be detected properly.
- Depending on the subject conditions or temperature, dust may not be detected properly.
- The Dust Alert image can only be displayed during sensor cleaning within 30 minutes from the time the image is saved. If more than 30 minutes elapse, save a new Dust Alert image and then perform sensor cleaning.
- The saved Dust Alert image cannot be displayed in Playback mode.
- The Dust Alert image is saved only when an SD Memory Card is inserted.

1 Select [Dust Alert] in the [🔧 Set-up 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

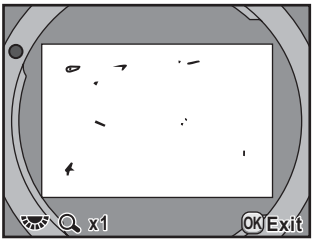
The [Dust Alert] screen appears.

2 Fully display a white wall or other bright subject with no detail in the viewfinder and press the shutter release button fully.

After image processing is performed, the Dust Alert image appears.

If the message [The operation could not be completed correctly] is displayed, press the **OK** button and take another picture.

3 Check the sensor for dust.



Available operations

Rear e-dial ( )/ **INFO** button	Displays the Dust Alert image at full screen display.

4 Press the OK button.

The Dust Alert image is saved and the camera returns to the [Set-up 4] menu.

memo Regardless of the camera settings, the Dust Alert image will be taken with specific shooting conditions.

Removing Dust with a Blower

Raise the mirror up and open the shutter when cleaning the CMOS sensor with a blower.
Please contact a PENTAX Service Center for professional cleaning because the CMOS sensor is a precision part. Cleaning services involve a fee.
You can use the optional Imagesensor Cleaning kit O-ICK1 (p.350) when cleaning the CMOS sensor.

Caution

- Do not use a spray type blower.
- Do not perform Sensor Cleaning during Bulb shooting. The shutter may accidentally close and may cause damage to the camera's internal parts.
- To prevent dirt and dust from accumulating on the CMOS sensor, keep the lens mount cap on the camera when a lens is not attached.
- When the battery level is low, the message [Not enough battery power remaining to clean sensor] is displayed on the monitor.
- It is recommended to use the AC adapter kit K-AC50 (optional) when cleaning the sensor. If you are not using the AC adapter kit K-AC50, please install the battery with ample capacity remaining. If the battery capacity becomes low during cleaning, a warning beep will sound. In this case, stop cleaning immediately.
- Do not put the tip of the blower inside the lens mount area. If the power is turned off, this may cause damage to the shutter, CMOS sensor and the mirror.

memo

- The self-timer lamp blinks, and [**M.UP**] and [**CIn**] appear on the LCD panel while cleaning the sensor.
- This camera may generate a vibration sound while cleaning the CMOS sensor. It is not a malfunction.

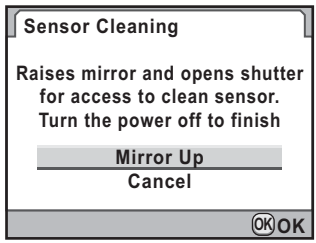
1 Turn the camera off and remove the lens.

2 Turn the camera on.

3 Select [Sensor Cleaning] in the [🔧 Set-up 4] menu and press the four-way controller (▶).

The [Sensor Cleaning] screen appears.

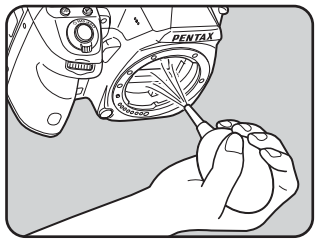
4 Press the four-way controller (▲) to select [Mirror Up] and press the OK button.



The mirror is locked in the up position.

If you used Dust Alert to detect dust on the sensor within the last 30 minutes, the Dust Alert image appears on the monitor. Clean the sensor while checking the location of the dust.

5 Clean the CMOS sensor.



Use a brush-less blower to remove dirt and dust from the CMOS sensor. Using a blower with a brush may scratch the CMOS sensor. Do not wipe the CMOS sensor with a cloth.

6 Turn off the camera.

7 Attach the lens after the mirror returns to its original position.

Optional Accessories

A number of dedicated accessories are available for this camera. Contact a PENTAX Service Center for details regarding accessories.
Products marked with an asterisk (*) are the same as those supplied with the camera.

Power Supply Accessories

Battery Charger kit K-BC90 (*)
(Kit includes Battery Charger D-BC90 and AC plug cord.)

Rechargeable Lithium-ion Battery D-LI90 (*)

AC Adapter kit K-AC50
(Kit includes AC Adapter D-AC50 and AC plug cord.)
Lets you power your camera from an AC outlet.

Battery Grip D-BG4
The Battery Grip has features such as a shutter release button, front e-dial, rear e-dial, and **AE-L** button to accommodate shooting vertically. In addition to the rechargeable lithium-ion battery D-LI90, AA lithium/Ni-MH/ alkaline batteries can also be used in the battery grip to power the camera.

memo The battery charger and AC adapter are only sold as a kit respectively.

Flash Accessories

Auto Flash AF540FGZ
Auto Flash AF360FGZ
The AF540FGZ and AF360FGZ are P-TTL auto flash units with a maximum guide number of 54 and 36 (ISO 100/m), respectively. Their features include slave-sync flash, contrast-control-sync flash, high-speed sync flash, wireless flash, slow-speed sync and trailing curtain sync flash.

AF540FGZ

AF360FGZ

Auto Flash AF200FG
The AF200FG is a P-TTL auto flash unit with a maximum guide number of 20 (ISO 100/m). It features contrast-control-sync flash and slow-speed sync flash when combined with an AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ unit.

AF200FG

Auto Macro Flash AF160FC
The AF160FC is a flash system especially designed for macro photography to take close, shadowless pictures of small objects. It is compatible with existing TTL auto flash functions and it can be used with a wide range of PENTAX cameras by using provided adapter rings.

AF160FC

Hot Shoe Adapter FG

Extension Cord F5P

Hot Shoe Adapter FG

Off-camera Shoe Adapter F
Use the adapters and cords to use the external flash away from the camera.

Off-camera Shoe Adapter F

Off-camera Shoe Clip CL-10
When using the AF540FGZ or AF360FGZ as a wireless flash, this large clip is used for setting the external flash on a desk or table.

Off-camera Shoe Clip CL-10

For Viewfinder

Magnifier Eyecup O-ME53
This viewfinder accessory is for magnifying up to approximately 1.18 times.
When the eyecup is attached to the ***K-5*** with a viewfinder magnification of approximately 0.92 times, the combined magnification becomes approximately 1.09 times, making manual focusing much easier.

Magnifier Eyecup O-ME53

Magnifier FB
This viewfinder accessory is for magnifying the central area of the viewfinder 2×.
You can see the entire view by simply flipping up the accessory from the eye-piece, as it is a hinge-type magnifier.

Magnifier FB

Ref-converter A

This is an accessory that changes the viewfinder viewing angle at 90° intervals. The viewfinder magnification can be switched between 1× and 2×.

Ref-converter A

Diopter correction lens adapter M

This accessory adjusts the diopter. Install it on the viewfinder.
If it is difficult to see the viewfinder image clearly, choose one of the eight correction of approximately -5 to +3m^{-1} (per meter).

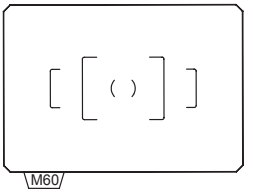
Diopter correction lens adapter M

ME Viewfinder Cap (*)

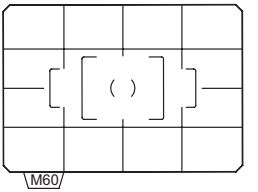
Eyecup FR (*)

Interchangeable Focusing Screen

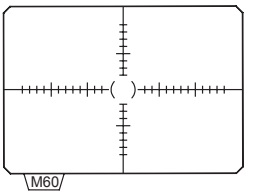
AF Frame Matte MF-60 (*)



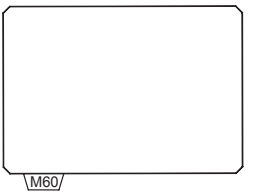
AF Divided Matte ML-60



AF Scale Matte MI-60



Plain Matte ME-60



Cable Switch CS-205

Connect to the cable release terminal and operate the camera shutter release button. The cord length is 0.5 m.

Remote Control

Used for Remote Control shooting.

Operating distance for remote control
From the front of camera: approx. 4 m
From the back of camera: approx. 2 m

Remote Control F

Remote Control Waterproof O-RC1

Camera Case/Strap

Camera Case O-CC90

Camera Strap O-ST53 (*)

Imagesensor Cleaning Kit O-ICK1

Use this kit to clean the optical parts such as the CMOS sensor and lens of this camera.

Others

Body Mount Cap K

Hot Shoe Cover FK (*)

USB Cable I-USB7 (*)

AV Cable I-AVC7 (*)

Sync Socket 2P Cap (*)

Error Messages

Error message	Description
Memory card full	The SD Memory Card is full and no more images can be saved. Insert a new SD Memory Card or delete unwanted images. (p.55, p.84) Data may be saved when you perform the following operations. • Change the file format to JPEG. (p.202) • Change the JPEG Recorded Pixels or JPEG Quality setting. (p.200, p.201)
No image	There are no images that can be played back on the SD Memory Card.
This image cannot be displayed	You are trying to play back an image in a format not supported by this camera. You may be able to play it back on another brand of camera or your computer.
No card in the camera	The SD Memory Card is not inserted in the camera. (p.55)
Cannot use this card	The inserted SD Memory Card is not compatible with this camera.
Memory card error	The SD Memory Card has a problem, and image capture and playback are impossible. It may be viewable on a computer but not with this camera.
Card is not formatted	The SD Memory Card you have inserted is unformatted or has been formatted on another device and is not compatible with this camera. Use the card after formatting it with this camera. (p.281)
Card is locked	The write-protect switch on an SD Memory Card you have inserted is locked. Unlock the SD Memory Card. (p.56)
The card is electronically locked	Data is protected by an SD Memory Card security feature.
This image cannot be enlarged	You are trying to enlarge an image that cannot be enlarged.
This image is protected	You are trying to delete an image that is protected. Remove protection from the image. (p.254)

Error message	Description
Battery depleted	The battery is exhausted. Install a fully charged battery in the camera. (p.49)
Not enough battery power remaining to clean sensor	Appears during sensor cleaning if the battery level is insufficient. Install a fully charged battery or use an AC adaptor kit K-AC50 (optional). (p.53)
Not enough battery power remaining to activate Pixel Mapping	Appears during pixel mapping if the battery level is insufficient. Install a fully charged battery or use an AC adaptor kit K-AC50 (optional). (p.53)
Image folder cannot be created	The maximum folder number (999) and file number (9999) are being used, and no more images can be saved. Insert a new SD Memory Card or format the card. (p.281)
Unable to store image	The image could not be saved because of an SD Memory Card error.
Settings not stored	The DPOF settings could not be saved because SD Memory Card is full. Delete unwanted images and perform DPOF setting again. (p.84)
The operation could not be completed correctly	The camera was unable to measure the manual white balance or detect dust on the sensor. Try the operation again. (p.208, p.341)
No more images can be selected	You cannot select 100 or more images at a time for Index (p.243) and Select & Delete (p.250).
No image can be processed	There are no images that can be processed using Digital Filter (p.265) or RAW Development (p.271) function.
This image cannot be processed	Appears when you try to perform Save as Manual WB (p.213), Resize (p.262), Cropping (p.263), Digital Filter (p.265), or RAW Development (p.271) for images captured with other cameras, or when you try to perform Resize or Cropping for minimum file size images.
The camera failed to create an image	The creation of an index print image failed. (p.243)
Camera overheated. Disabling Live View temporarily to protect circuitry	Live View cannot be used because the camera's internal temperature is too high. Press the **OK** button and try using Live View again when the camera has cooled down.

Error message	Description
Cannot start Live View	Appears if Live View is started when [27. Using Aperture Ring] is set to [Prohibited] in the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu and the lens aperture ring is set to a position other than **A**, or a lens without an **A** position is being used.
This function is not available in the current mode	You are trying to set a function that is not available in ■ (Green) or 🎥 (Movie) mode.

Troubleshooting

In rare cases, the camera may not operate correctly due to static electricity. This can be remedied by taking the battery out and putting it back in again. When the mirror remains in the up position, take the battery out and put it back in again. Then, the mirror will retract when the camera is turned on again. After these procedures are done, if the camera operates correctly, it does not require any repairs.
We recommend checking the following items before contacting a service center.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
The camera does not turn on	The battery is not installed	Check if a battery is installed. If not, install a fully charged battery.
	The battery power is low	Replace with a fully charged battery or use the AC adapter kit K-AC50 (optional). (p.53)
The shutter cannot be released	The lens aperture ring is set to other than the **A** position	Set the lens aperture ring to the **A** position (p.102) or select [Permitted] in [27. Using Aperture Ring] of the [**C** Custom Setting 4] menu. (p.339)
	The built-in flash is charging	Wait until charging is finished.
	There is no available space on the SD Memory Card	Insert an SD Memory Card with available space or delete unwanted images. (p.55, p.84)
	Recording	Wait until recording is finished.
Autofocus does not work	The subject is difficult to focus on	Autofocus cannot focus well on subjects that have low contrast (the sky, white walls, etc.), dark colors, intricate designs, rapidly-moving objects or scenery shot through a window or a net-like pattern. Lock focus on another object located at the same distance as your subject, then aim at the target and press the shutter release button fully. Alternatively, use manual focus. (p.132)
	The subject is not in the focusing area	Position the subject in the focus frame in the middle of the viewfinder. If the subject is outside the focusing area, aim the camera at the subject and lock the focus, then compose a picture and press the shutter release button fully. (p.130)
	The subject is too close	Move away from the subject and take a picture.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Autofocus does not work	The focus mode is set to **MF**	Set the focus mode lever to **AF.S** or **C**. (p.122)
The focus cannot be locked	The focus mode is set to **AF.C**	Autofocus is not locked (focus lock) when the focus mode is set to **AF.C** (**C**). The camera will continue focusing on the subject while the shutter release button is pressed halfway. If there is a subject that you wish to focus on, slide the focus mode lever to **AF.S** and use the focus lock. (p.130)
The AE Lock function does not operate	The exposure mode is set to ■, **B** or **X** mode	Set the exposure mode to any mode other than ■ (Green), **B** (Bulb) or **X** (Flash X-sync Speed).
The built-in flash does not discharge	The exposure mode is set to ■ mode	Only ⚡ᴬ (Auto Flash Discharge) and ⚡◉ (Auto Flash+Red-eye Reduction) are available for the flash mode when the exposure mode is ■ (Green). The flash will not discharge when the subject is bright in these modes. In the exposure modes other than ■, only the flash mode that discharges every time the flash recharges is available. Try different exposure modes.
The USB connection with a computer does not work properly	The USB connection mode is set to [PTP]	Set [USB Connection] to [MSC] in the [🔧 Set-up 2] menu. (p.317)
Shake Reduction does not work	The Shake Reduction function is off	Set [Shake Reduction] to (✋) (On) in the [📷 Rec. Mode 4] menu. (p.140)
	The Shake Reduction function is not set properly	If a lens for which the focal length information cannot be obtained is used, set the focal length in the [Input Focal Length] screen. (p.142)
	Shutter speed is too low for the Shake Reduction function to be effective when panning or shooting night scenes, etc.	Turn off the Shake Reduction function and use a tripod.
	The subject is too close	Move away from the subject, or turn off the Shake Reduction function and use a tripod.

Main Specifications

Model Description

Type	TTL autofocus, auto-exposure SLR digital-still camera with built-in retractable P-TTL flash
Lens Mount	PENTAX KAF2 bayonet mount (AF coupler, lens information contacts, K-mount with power contacts)
Compatible Lens	KAF3, KAF2 (power zoom compatible), KAF, KA mount lenses

Image Capture Unit

Image Sensor	Primary color filter, CMOS, Size: 23.7 x 15.7 (mm)
Effective Pixels	Approx. 16.28 megapixels
Total Pixels	Approx. 16.93 megapixels
Dust Removal	Image sensor cleaning using ultrasonic vibrations “DR II” with the Dust Alert function
Sensitivity (Standard Output)	AUTO/100 to 12800 (EV steps can be set to 1 EV, 1/2 EV or 1/3 EV), expandable from ISO 80 to ISO 51200. Up to ISO 1600 in **B** mode.

Image Stabilizer

Type	CMOS image sensor shift
Effective Compensation Range	Up to 4 EV (depending on the used lens type and shooting conditions)

File Formats

File Format	RAW (PEF/DNG), JPEG (Exif 2.21), DCF2.0 compliant
Recorded Pixels	JPEG: 16M (4928×3264 pixels), 10M (3936×2624 pixels), 6M (3072×2048 pixels), 2M (1728×1152 pixels) RAW: 16M (4928×3264 pixels)
Quality Level	RAW (14bit): PEF, DNG JPEG: ★★★★ (Premium), ★★★ (Best), ★★ (Better), ★ (Good), RAW + JPEG simultaneous capturing compatible
Color Space	sRGB, AdobeRGB
Storage Medium	SD/SDHC Memory Card
Storage Folder	Date (100_1018,101_1019...)/ PENTX (100PENTX, 101PENTX...)

Viewfinder

Type	Pentaprism Finder
Coverage (FOV)	Approx. 100%
Magnification	Approx. 0.92× (50 mm F1.4 • ∞)
Eye-Relief Length	Approx. 21.7 mm (from the view window), Approx. 24.5 mm (from the center of lens)
Diopter Adjustment	Approx. -2.5 to +1.5m^{-1}
Focusing Screen	Interchangeable Natural-Bright-Matte III focusing screen

Live View

Type	TTL method using CMOS image sensor
Focusing Mechanism	Contrast detection + Face detection, Contrast detection, Phase matching
Display	Field of View approx. 100%, Magnified view (**AF** mode: 2×, 4×, 6×/**MF** mode: 2×, 4×, 6×, 8×, 10×), Grid display (4×4 Grid, Golden Section, Scale display), Bright/dark area warning, Histogram

LCD Monitor

Type	Wide viewing angle TFT color LCD
Size	3.0 inches
Dots	Approx. 921,000 dots
Adjustment	Brightness and colors adjustable

Preview

Type	Optical preview, digital preview

White Balance

Auto	TTL method using CMOS image sensor
Preset	Daylight, Shade, Cloudy, Fluorescent Light (**D**: Daylight Color, **N**: Daylight White, **W**: Cool White, **L**: Warm White), Tungsten Light, Flash, **CTE**, Manual, Color Temperature
Manual	Configuration using the display screen (up to 3 settings can be saved), Color Temperature settings (up to 3 settings can be saved), Copying the white balance setting of a captured image
Fine Adjustment	Adjustable ±7 steps on A-B axis and/or G-M axis

Autofocus System

Type	TTL: phase-matching autofocus
Focus Sensor	SAFOX IX+, 11 points (9 cross type focus points in the center)
Brightness Range	EV-1 to 18 (ISO100)
AF Mode	Single AF (**AF.S**), Continuous AF (**AF.C**) Focus priority or shutter priority mode for **AF.S** Focus priority or FPS priority mode for **AF.C**
AF Point Selection	Auto: 5 points, Auto: 11 points, Select, Center
AF Assist Light	Dedicated LED AF assist light

Metering

Type	TTL open aperture, 77 segmented metering, center-weighted and spot metering
Exposure Compensation	EV0 to 22 (ISO100 50mm F1.4)
Exposure Mode	Green, Program, Sensitivity Priority, Shutter Priority, Aperture Priority, Shutter & Aperture Priority, Manual, Bulb, Flash X-sync Speed
EV Compensation Steps	±5 EV (1/2 EV steps or 1/3 EV steps can be selected)
AE Lock	Available via dedicated AE Lock button (timer type: two times the meter operating time set in Custom Setting); Continuous as long as the shutter button is halfway pressed.

Shutter

Type	Electronically controlled vertical-run focal-plane shutter
Shutter Speed	Auto: 1/8000 to 30 sec., Manual: 1/8000 to 30 sec. (1/3 EV steps or 1/ 2EV steps), Bulb

Drive Modes

Mode Selection	Single frame, Continuous (Hi, Lo), Self-timer (12s, 2s), Remote Control (immediately, 3 sec., continuous), Auto Bracketing (2, 3 or 5 frames), Auto Bracketing + Self-timer, Auto Bracketing + Remote Control, Mirror Lock-up, Mirror Lock-up + Remote Control
Continuous Shooting	Max. approx. 7.0 fps, JPEG (16M•★★★•Continuous Hi): up to approx. 30 frames, RAW: up to approx. 20 frames Max. approx. 1.6 fps, JPEG (16M•★★★•Continuous Lo): until SD Memory Card is full, RAW: up to approx. 40 frames

Flash

Built-in Flash	Built-in P-TTL flash with serial control, GN: approx. 13 (ISO100/m) Angle of view: equivalent to angle of view of 28mm lens (35mm format equivalent)

Flash Mode	P-TTL, Red-eye Reduction, Slow-speed Sync, Trailing Curtain Sync, High-Speed Sync and Wireless Sync are also available with PENTAX dedicated external flash.
Sync Speed	1/180 sec.
Flash Exposure Compensation	-2.0 to +1.0EV

Capture Functions

Custom Image	Bright, Natural, Portrait, Landscape, Vibrant, Muted, Bleach Bypass, Reversal Film, Monochrome
Noise Reduction	Slow Shutter Speed NR, High-ISO NR
Dynamic Range Setting	Highlight Correction, Shadow Correction
Lens Correction	Distortion Correction, Lateral Chromatic Aberration Correction
Cross Processing	Random, Preset 1-3, Favorite 1-3
Digital Filter	Toy Camera, Retro, High Contrast, Extract Color, Soft, Starburst, Fish-eye, Custom Filter
HDR Capture	Auto, Standard, Strong 1, Strong 2, Strong 3, Automatic composition correction function
Multi-exposure	Select the number of shots between 2 and 9. Auto EV adjustment available.
Interval Shooting	Capture Interval setting (1 sec. to 24 hr.), Start Interval setting (immediate, designated time), Captures up to 999 images
Extended Bracketing	White Balance, Saturation, Hue, High/Low Key Adj, Contrast, Sharpness
Horizon Correction	SR On: adjusts up to 1 degree, SR Off: adjusts up to 2 degrees
Composition Adjustment	Adjustment range of ±1.5 mm up, down, left or right (1 mm when rotated); rotating range of 1 degree
Electronic Level	Displayed in viewfinder (horizontal direction only); displayed on LCD monitor (horizontal direction and vertical direction)

Movie

File Format	Motion JPEG (AVI)
Recorded Pixels	FullHD (1920×1080, 16:9, 25 fps), HD (1280×720, 16:9, 30 fps/25 fps), VGA (640×480, 4:3, 30 fps/25 fps)
Quality Level	★★★ (Best), ★★ (Better), ★ (Good)
Sound	Built-in monaural microphone, external stereo microphone terminal
Recording Time	Up to 25 minutes; automatically stops recording if the internal temperature of the camera becomes high.
Custom Image	Bright, Natural, Portrait, Landscape, Vibrant, Muted, Bleach Bypass, Reversal Film, Monochrome
Cross Processing	Random, Preset 1-3, Favorite 1-3

Digital Filter	Toy Camera, Retro, High Contrast, Extract Color, Color

Playback Functions

Playback View	Single frame, image comparison, multi-image display (4, 9, 16, 36, 81 segmentation), display magnification (up to 32x, scrolling and quick magnification available), rotating, histogram (Y histogram, RGB histogram), bright/dark area warning, detailed information display, copyright information display (photographer, copyright holder), folder display, calendar display, slideshow
Delete	Delete single image, delete all, select & delete, delete folder, delete instant review image
Digital Filter	Toy Camera, Retro, High Contrast, Sketch Filter, Water Color, Pastel, Posterization, Miniature, Base Parameter Adjustment, Monochrome, Color, Extract Color, Soft, Starburst, Fish-eye, Slim, HDR, Custom Filter
RAW Development	File Format (JPEG, TIFF), Custom Image, White Balance, Sensitivity, High-ISO NR, Shadow Correction, Distortion Correction, Lateral Chromatic Aberration Correction, Color Space
Edit	Resize, Cropping (Aspect ratio and Slant adjustment available), Index, Movie Edit (Divide or delete selected frames), Capturing a JPEG still picture from a movie

Customization

User Mode	Up to 5 settings can be saved.
Custom Functions	27 items
Mode Memory	13 items
Custom Button	**RAW**/**Fx** button (One Push File Format, Exposure Bracketing, Digital Preview, Electronic Level, Composition Adjustment) **AF** button (Enable AF, Cancel AF) Electrical dial customizable specifically to each exposure mode.
Text Size	Standard, Large
World Time	World Time settings for 75 cities (28 time zones)
Language	English, French, German, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, Dutch, Danish, Swedish, Finnish, Polish, Czech, Hungarian, Turkish, Greek, Russian, Korean, Traditional Chinese, Simplified Chinese, and Japanese
AF Fine Adjustment	±10 steps, uniform adjustment, individual adjustment (up to 20 can be saved)
Copyright Information	Names of “Photographer” and “Copyright Holder” are embedded to the image file. Revision history can be checked using the provided software.

Power Supply

Battery Type	Rechargeable Lithium-ion Battery D-LI90
AC Adapter	AC Adapter kit K-AC50 (optional)
Battery Life	Number of recordable images (with 50% flash usage): approx. 740 images, (without flash usage): approx. 980 images Playback time: approx. 440 minutes * Tested in compliance with CIPA standard. Actual results may vary depending on the shooting conditions/circumstances.

Interfaces

Connection Port	USB 2.0 (high-speed compatible)/AV output, DC input, Cable switch, X-sync socket, HDMI output, Stereo microphone
USB Connection	MSC/PTP
Video Output Format	NTSC/PAL

Dimensions and Weight

Dimensions	Approx. 131 mm (W) × 97 mm (H) × 73 mm (D) (excluding protrusions)
Weight	Approx. 660 g (body only), Approx. 740 g (including dedicated battery and SD Memory Card)

Accessories

Package Contents	USB Cable I-USB7, AV Cable I-AVC7, Strap O-ST53, ME Viewfinder Cap, Rechargeable Lithium-ion Battery D-LI90, Battery Charger D-BC90, AC plug cord, Software (CD-ROM) S-SW110 <Mounted on the camera> Eyecup FR, Hot shoe cover FK, Body mount cover, Sync socket 2P cap
Software	PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4

Glossary

AdobeRGB
Color space recommended by Adobe Systems, Inc. for commercial printing. Wider range of color reproduction than sRGB. Covers most of the color range so colors only available when printed are not lost when editing images on a computer. When an image is opened by non-compatible software, the colors look lighter.

Auto Bracketing
For automatically changing exposure. When the shutter release button is pressed, several images are captured. One has no compensation, one or more are underexposed, and one or more are overexposed. This camera features Exposure Bracketing that captures images in different exposures, and Extended Bracketing that captures images with set White Balance, Saturation, Hue, High/Low Key Adjustment, Contrast and Sharpness levels.

AE Metering
Brightness of subject is measured to determine exposure. In this camera, select from [Multi-segment Metering], [Center-weighted Metering] and [Spot Metering].

AF point
Position in the viewfinder that determines focus. In this camera, select from [Auto], [Select] and [Center].

Aperture
The aperture increases or reduces the light beam (thickness) passing through the lens to the CMOS sensor.

Bright Portion
Overexposed area in an image loses contrast and appears white.

Camera Shake (Blur)
When the camera moves while the shutter is open, the entire image appears blurred. This occurs more often when shutter speed is low. Prevent camera shake by raising the sensitivity, using the flash, and raising the shutter speed. Alternatively, use a tripod to stabilize the camera. As camera shake is most likely to occur when pressing the shutter release button, use the Shake Reduction function, Self-timer or Remote Control shooting to prevent camera movement.

CMOS sensor
Photography element which converts light entering through the lens into electric signals that create an image.

Color Space
A defined range of colors from the spectrum which are used. In digital cameras, [sRGB] is defined as the standard by Exif. In this camera, [AdobeRGB], which supports a wider color gamut than sRGB, can be also used.

Color Temperature
This numerically expresses the color of the light source illuminating the subject. This is indicated in absolute temperature, using Kelvin (K) units. The color of light shifts to a bluish color as the color temperature rises, and to a reddish color as the color temperature falls.

Dark Portion
Underexposed area in an image loses contrast and appears black.

DCF (Design rule for Camera File system)
A digital camera file system standard established by the Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA).

Depth of field
Area of focus. This depends on the aperture value, lens focal length, and distance to the subject. For example, select a smaller aperture value (higher number) to increase the depth of field or use a larger aperture value (smaller number) to decrease the depth of field.

DNG RAW file
DNG (Digital Negative) is a general-purpose RAW file format designed by Adobe Systems. When images captured in proprietary RAW formats are converted to DNG format, support and compatibility for the images increases significantly.

DPOF (Digital Print Order Format)
Rules for writing information onto a card with recorded images regarding the specific images and number of copies to be printed. Prints can easily be made by taking the images to a DPOF photo printing store.

Dynamic Range (D-Range)
Indicated with a value expressing the light level reproducible in an image. This is the same as the term “Exposure latitude” used with silver halide film.
Generally, when the dynamic range is wide, overexposed and/or underexposed areas are less likely to occur within the image, and when the dynamic range is narrow, all image tones can be reproduced sharply and accurately.

EV (Exposure Value)
Exposure value is determined by a combination of the aperture value and the shutter speed.

EV Compensation
Process of adjusting the image brightness by changing the shutter speed and/or aperture value.

Exif (Exchangeable image file format for digital still camera)
A standard digital camera file format established by the Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA).

Exif-JPEG format
Exif stands for Exchangeable Image File Format. This image file format is based on the JPEG image data format, and allows thumbnail images and image properties to be embedded into the data. Software that does not support this format processes the image as a regular JPEG image.

Exif-TIFF format
Exif stands for Exchangeable Image File Format. This image file format is based on the TIFF image data format, and allows thumbnail images and image properties to be embedded into the data. Software that does not support this format processes the image as a regular TIFF image.

Histogram
A graph that shows the darkest and brightest points in an image. The horizontal axis represents the brightness and the vertical axis represents the number of pixels. This is useful when you check the exposure level of an image.

ISO Sensitivity
The level of sensitivity to light. With a high sensitivity, images can be shot with a high shutter speed even in dark places, reducing camera shake. However, images taken with a high sensitivity are more susceptible to noise.

JPEG
An image compression format. Although the image quality deteriorates a little, images can be compressed to a smaller file size than with TIFF and other formats. In this camera, select from ★★★★ (Premium), ★★★ (Best), ★★ (Better), or ★ (Good). Images recorded in JPEG format are suited for viewing on your computer or attaching to e-mail.

Mired
Proportional scale of measurement that consistently shows color change per unit. Determined by multiplying the inverse of the color temperature by 1,000,000.

ND (Neutral Density) Filter
A filter with many saturation levels that adjusts the brightness without affecting the color tone of pictures.

Noise Reduction
Process to reduce noise (image roughness or unevenness) caused by slow shutter speed or high sensitivity shooting.

NTSC/PAL
These are video output formats. NTSC is mainly used in Japan, North America, and South Korea. PAL is mainly used in Europe and China.

Quality Level
This refers to the image compression ratio. The lower the compression, the more detailed the image. The image becomes rougher as the compression rate rises.

RAW data
Unedited image data output from the CMOS sensor. RAW data is data before being internally processed by the camera. Camera settings at the time of capture, such as White Balance, Contrast, Saturation, and Sharpness can be set for each frame after shooting. In addition, RAW data is 14 bit data that contain 64 times the information of 8 bit JPEG data. Rich gradations are possible. Transfer RAW data to your computer and use the provided software to create image data with different settings, such as JPEG or TIFF.

Recorded Pixels
Indicates the size of the image by the number of pixels. The more pixels that compose a picture, the larger the image size.

Shutter Speed
The length of time that the shutter is open and light strikes the CMOS sensor. The amount of light that strikes the CMOS sensor can be changed by altering the shutter speed.

sRGB (standard RGB)
International standard of color space established by the IEC (International Electrotechnical Commission). This is defined from color space for computer monitors and is also used as the standard color space for Exif.

Vignetting
The picture edges are blackened when part of the light coming from the subject is blocked by the hood or filter ring, or when the flash is partially blocked by the lens.

White Balance
While shooting, color temperature is adjusted to match the light source so that the subject appears to have the correct color.

Symbols

⦿ (Green) button 21, 23
⟲ (Preview) 135
[C Custom Setting] Menu 91, 333
■ (Green) mode 71, 103
▶ (Playback) button 21, 23, 83
[▶ Playback] Menu 235, 332
[📷 Rec. Mode] Menu 89, 328
🗑 (Delete) button 23, 84
[🔧 Set-up] Menu 278, 332
⚡ (Flash pop-up) button ...21, 79
± (EV Compensation) button 20, 23, 119

A

AC adapter 53
Accessories 345
Adding the date 310
AdobeRGB 212, 362
AE Lock 121, 131
AE Metering 117, 362
AE-L button 21, 114, 121
AF Assist Light 19, 72, 124
AF (Autofocus) 122
AF button 21, 124, 286
AF coupler 19
AF Fine Adjustment 126
AF point switching dial ...21, 127
AF160FC 187, 346
AF200FG 187, 346
AF360FGZ 187, 346
AF540FGZ 187, 346
Aperture 93, 362
Aperture Priority Mode **Av** 109
Aperture ring 102, 339
Aspect Ratio 171, 263
Auto Bracketing 157, 362
Auto Image Rotation 236
Auto Power Off 304
Auto Screen Rotation 295
AWB (White Balance) 205
Autofocus **AF** 122
Automatic sensitivity correction 96
Av (Aperture Priority) mode 109
AV cable 256
AV device 256

B

B (Bulb) Mode 115
Base Parameter Adj (Digital Filter) 265
Battery 49
Battery grip contacts 19
Beep 288
Bright portions 214, 362
Bright/Dark Area warning 236
Brightness adjustment 214
Brightness Level 297
Brightness of the monitor 297
Built-in flash 77
Bulb Mode **B** 115
Button Customization 285

C

Cable release terminal 19
Cable switch 116, 349
Calendar display 240
Camera shake 362
Card access lamp 19
Catch-in Focus 134
Center-weighted metering 118
Charging the battery 49

City names 291
Cloudy (White Balance) 205
CMOS sensor 363
Color (Digital Filter) 163, 266
Color of the monitor 298
Color Space 212, 363
Color Temperature 210, 211, 363
Composition Adjustment 220
Computer 315
Continuous Shooting 151
Contrast (Custom Image) 222
Contrast AF 166
Contrast-Control-Sync mode (flash) 196
Control panel 27, 40
Copyright Holder 307
Correct exposure 93
Creating folders 300
Cropping 263
Cross Processing 225
CTE (White Balance) 205
Custom Filter (Digital Filters) 163, 266
Custom Image 222
[**C** Custom Setting] Menu 91, 333
Customizing buttons and dials 282

D

Dark portions 214, 363
Date Adjustment 67
Date change 289
Daylight (White Balance) 205
Daylight-Sync shooting 81
DCF 363
Default settings 328
Delete 84, 250
Delete all images 253
🗑 (Delete) button 23, 84
Delete folder 252
Deleting a single image 84
Depth of field 94, 363
Destination 289
Detailed information display 30
Developing RAW images 271
Digital Filter 162, 265
Digital Preview 138
Diopter adjustment 61
Direct keys 39, 88, 328
Display Color 295
Display language 292
Distortion 218
DNG 363
DPOF 363
DPOF settings 309
D-Range 214, 364
Drive Mode 88
Dust Alert 341
Dust Removal 340
Dynamic Range 214, 364

E

E-Dial Programming 282
E-dials 282
Electronic Level 38, 299
Electronic level display 28
Enlarging images 237
Error message 351
EV 364
EV Compensation 119, 364
± (EV Compensation) button 20, 23, 119
EV Steps 120
Exif 307, 364
Exposure 93
Exposure Bracketing 157
Exposure Mode 45, 100
Exposure warning 108, 110, 112
Extended Bracketing 160

External flash 187
Extra Sharpness 222
Extract Color (Digital Filter) 162, 266
Eyecup 61

F

Face Detection AF 166
File Format 202
File Name 302
File number 301
Filter 162, 265
Filter Effect (Custom Image) 222
Fish-eye (Digital Filter) 162, 266
Flash 77, 181
Flash (White Balance) 205
Flash Exposure Compensation 82
ϟ (Flash pop-up) button ...21, 79
Flash X-sync Speed Mode **X** 116
Fluorescent Light (White Balance) 205
Focal length 142
Focus indicator 72, 132
Focus Lock 130
Focus Mode 122
Focus mode lever 21, 122
Focus point 127, 362
Focusing 122
Folder display 239
Folder Name 300
Format 281
Four-way controller (▲▼◀▶) 22, 23
Frame rate 171
Front e-dial 20, 23

G

Green button 21, 23
Green mode ■ 71, 103
Guide Display 24, 293
Guide indicator 34

H

HDMI terminal 258
HDR (Digital Filter) 266
HDR Capture 215
Help 324
High Contrast (Digital Filter) 162, 265
High dynamic range 215
High/Low Key Adjustment (Custom Image) 222
High-ISO NR 98
Highlight Correction 214
High-Speed Flash Sync mode (flash) 189
Histogram 32, 364
Hometown 64, 289
Horizon Correction 140
Hot shoe 19
Hue (Custom Image) 222
Hyper-manual Mode **M** 112
Hyper-program Mode **P** 104

I

Image Comparison 241
Image finishing tone 222
Image plane indicator 19
Index 243
INFO button 21, 23, 25, 29, 83
Initial settings 63
Initializing 281
Input Focal Length 142
Installing software 320
Instant Review 73, 296
Interval Shooting 152
ISO button 20, 95
ISO Sensitivity 365

J

JPEG 365
JPEG Quality 57, 201
JPEG Recorded Pixels ...57, 200

K

Kelvin 210

L

Language setting 63, 292
Lateral chromatic aberration 218
LCD Color Tuning 298
LCD panel 37
Lens 59, 337
Lens Correction 218
Lens information contacts 19
Lens mount index 19
Lens unlock button 20, 60
Live View 165
Locking the exposure ...121, 131
Locking the focus 130
LV button 21, 168

M

M (Hyper-manual) Mode 112
Macintosh 316
Main switch 20, 23, 62
Manual focus **MF** 132
Manual White Balance 208
Mass Storage Class 318
Matte field 133
Memory 312
Memory card 55
MENU button 22, 23, 42
Menu operation 42
Menu page display 294
Meter Operating Time 118
Metering mode switching lever 21, 117
MF (Manual focus) 132
Microphone 19, 173
Miniature (Digital Filter) 265
Mired 210, 365
Mirror 19
Mirror Lock-up 149
Mirror Up 344
Mode dial 21, 45
Mode dial lock button 21
Monitor 24
Monochrome (Digital Filter) 265
Movie 171
Movie Editing 179
Movie playback 177
MSC 318
Multi-exposure 155
Multi-image display 238
Multiple flash shooting 195
Multi-segment metering 117

N

ND (Neutral density) filter 365
Noise Reduction 98, 365
NTSC 257, 365

O

OK button 21, 23
One Push File Format 203
Optical Preview 137
Optional accessories 345

P

P (Hyper-program) Mode 104
PAL 257, 365
Pastel (Digital Filter) 265
PC/AV terminal 256
PENTAX Digital Camera Utility 4 320
Phase Difference AF 166
Photographer information 307
Picture Transfer Protocol 318
Pixel Mapping 311
Pixels 200

Playback 83
▶ (Playback) button 21, 23, 83
Playback display 29
Playback mode palette 234, 331
Playback time 52
Playing back images continuously 246
Posterization (Digital Filter) 265
Power supply 62
Press fully 74
Press halfway 74
Preview 135
Preview Dial 286
Print settings 309
Product registration 325
Program Line 102
Program Mode **P** 104
Protect 254
Provided software 320
PTP 318
P-TTL (Flash) 193
P-TTL Auto (Flash) 188

Q

Quality Level 57, 201, 365
Quick Zoom 236

R

RAW 202, 366
RAW Development 271
RAW File Format 203
RAW/**Fx** button 21, 286
Rear e-dial 21, 23
Recorded Pixels 57, 200, 366
Red-eye reduction 80, 193
Remaining image storage capacity 52, 58
Remote Control 145, 349
Reset 335
Resize 262
Retro (Digital Filter) 162, 265
Rotate 249

S

Saturation (Custom Image) 222
Save as Manual WB 213
Save Settings 227
SD Memory Card 55
Select & Delete 250
Select Battery 305
Self-timer 143
Sensitivity 95
Sensitivity Priority Mode **Sv** 105
Sensor Cleaning 340, 343
Shade (White Balance) 205
Shadow Correction 214
Shake Reduction 139
Sharpness (Custom Image) 222
Shooting information 25
Show Grid 167
Shutter & Aperture Priority Mode **TAv** 110
Shutter Button Half Press 286
Shutter Priority Mode **Tv** 107
Shutter release button 20, 23, 74
Shutter speed 93, 366
Sketch Filter (Digital Filter) 265
Slideshow 246
Slim (Digital Filter) 266
Slow Shutter Speed NR 99
Slow-speed Sync 182
Soft (Digital Filter) 162, 266
Sound 288
Speaker 19
Spot Metering 118
sRGB 212, 366

Starburst (Digital Filter) 162, 266
Status display 295
Status screen 26
Strap 48
Superimpose AF Area 36, 127
Sv (Sensitivity Priority) mode 105

T

TAv (Shutter & Aperture Priority) mode 110
Text Size 64, 293
Toning (Custom Image) 222
Toy Camera (Digital Filter) 162, 265
Trailing Curtain Sync 184, 194
Tungsten Light (White Balance) 205
TV 256
Tv (Shutter Priority) Mode 107

U

USB Connection 317
USB Connection mode 317
USER Mode 227

V

Vertical position 29
Video input terminal 256
Video output format 257
Viewfinder 35, 61
Vignetting 77, 366

W

Water Color (Digital Filter) 265
White Balance 205, 366
Windows 316
Wireless flash control 193
Wireless Mode (Flash) 190
World Time 289
Write-protect 56

X

X (Flash X-sync Speed) mode 116
X-sync socket 197

Z

Zoom lens 76

WARRANTY POLICY

All PENTAX cameras purchased through authorized bona fide photographic distribution channels are guaranteed against defects of material or workmanship for a period of twelve months from date of purchase. Service will be rendered, and defective parts will be replaced without cost to you within that period, provided the equipment does not show evidence of impact, sand or liquid damage, mishandling, tampering, battery or chemical corrosion, operation contrary to operating instructions, or modification by an unauthorized repair shop. The manufacturer or its authorized representatives shall not be liable for any repair or alterations except those made with its written consent and shall not be liable for damages from delay or loss of use or from other indirect or consequential damages of any kind, whether caused by defective material or workmanship or otherwise; and it is expressly agreed that the liability of the manufacturer or its representatives under all guarantees or warranties, whether expressed or implied, is strictly limited to the replacement of parts as hereinbefore provided. No refunds will be made on repairs by non-authorized PENTAX service facilities.

Procedure During 12-month Warranty Period
Any PENTAX which proves defective during the 12-month warranty period should be returned to the dealer from whom you purchased the equipment or to the manufacturer. If there are no representatives of the manufacturer in your country, send the equipment to the manufacturer, with postage prepaid. In this case, it will take a considerable length of time before the equipment can be returned to you owing to the complicated customs procedures required. If the equipment is covered by warranty, repairs will be made and parts replaced free of charge, and the equipment will be returned to you upon completion of servicing. If the equipment is not covered by warranty, regular charges of the manufacturer or of its representatives will apply. Shipping charges are to be borne by the owner. If your PENTAX was purchased outside of the country where you wish to have it serviced during the warranty period, regular handling and servicing fees may be charged by the manufacturer's representatives in that country. Notwithstanding this, your PENTAX returned to the manufacturer will be serviced free of charge according to this procedure and warranty policy. In any case, however, shipping charges and customs clearance fees to be borne by the sender. To prove the date of your purchase when required, please keep the receipt or bills covering the purchase of your equipment for at least a year. Before sending your equipment for servicing, please make sure that you are sending it to the manufacturer's authorized

representatives or their approved repair shops, unless you are sending it directly to the manufacturer. Always obtain a quotation for the service charge, and only after you accept the quoted service charge, instruct the service station to proceed with the servicing.

- **This warranty policy does not affect the customer's statutory rights.**
- **The local warranty policies available from PENTAX distributors in some countries can supersede this warranty policy. Therefore, we recommend that you review the warranty card supplied with your product at the time of purchase, or contact the PENTAX distributor in your country for more information and to receive a copy of the warranty policy.**

CE The CE Mark is a Directive conformity mark of the European Union.

For customers in USA
STATEMENT OF FCC COMPLIANCE
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
Changes or modifications not approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules.
These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.
If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

* Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

For customers in Canada
This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Pour les utilisateurs au Canada
Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

FOR CALIFORNIA, U.S.A. ONLY
Perchlorate Material-special handling may apply.
The lithium battery used in this camera contains perchlorate material, which may require special handling.
See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

Declaration of Conformity

According to 47CFR, Parts 2 and 15 for

Class B Personal Computers and Peripherals

We: PENTAX Imaging Company
A Division of PENTAX of America, Inc.

Located at: 600 12th Street, Suite 300
Golden, Colorado 80401 U.S.A.
Phone: 303-799-8000 FAX: 303-790-1131

Declare under sole responsibility that the product identified herein complies with 47CFR Parts 2 and 15 of the FCC rules as a Class B digital device. Each product marketed is identical to the representative unit tested and found to be compliant with the standards. Records maintained continue to reflect the equipment being produced can be expected to be within the variation accepted, due to quantity production and testing on the statistical basis as required by 47CFR §2.909. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. The above named party is responsible for ensuring that the equipment complies with the standards of 47CFR §15.101 to §15.109.

Product Name: PENTAX Digital Still Camera

Model Number: K-5

Contact person: Customer Service Manager

Date and Place: October, 2010, Colorado

Information for Users on Collection and Disposal of Old Equipment and Used Batteries

1. In the European Union

These symbols on the products, packaging and/or accompanying documents mean that used electrical and electronic equipments and batteries should not be mixed with general household waste.

Used electrical/electronic equipments and batteries must be treated separately and in accordance with legislation that requires proper treatment, recovery and recycling of these products.
Following the implementation by member states, private households within the EU states may return their used electrical/electronic equipments and batteries to designated collection facilities free of charge*.
In some countries your local retailer may also take back your old product free of charge if you purchase a similar new one.
*Please contact your local authority for further details.

By disposing of this product correctly you will help ensure that the waste undergoes the necessary treatment, recovery and recycling and thus prevent potential negative effects on the environment and human health which could otherwise arise due to inappropriate waste handling.

2. In other countries outside the EU

These symbols are only valid in the European Union. If you wish to discard these items, please contact your local authorities or dealer and ask for the correct method of disposal.

For Switzerland: Used electrical/electronic equipment can be returned free of charge to the dealer, even when you don't purchase a new product. Further collection facilities are listed on the home page of www.swico.ch or www.sens.ch.

Note for the battery symbol (bottom two symbol examples):
This symbol might be used in combination with a designation for the chemical element or compound in use. In this case you have to comply with the requirement set by the Directive for the chemicals involved.

Memo

Memo

Memo

HOYA CORPORATION
PENTAX Imaging Systems Division

2-35-7, Maeno-cho, Itabashi-ku, Tokyo 174-8639, JAPAN
(http://www.pentax.jp)

PENTAX Europe Imaging Systems S.A.S. (European Headquarters) 112 Quai de Bezons, B.P. 204, 95106 Argenteuil Cedex, FRANCE
(HQ - http://www.pentaxeurope.com)
(France - http://www.pentax.fr)

PENTAX Imaging Systems GmbH Julius-Vosseler-Strasse 104, 22527 Hamburg, GERMANY
(http://www.pentax.de)

PENTAX Imaging Systems Limited PENTAX House, Heron Drive, Langley, Slough, Berks SL3 8PN, U.K.
(http://www.pentax.co.uk)

PENTAX Imaging Company
A Division of PENTAX of America, Inc.

(Headquarters)
600 12th Street, Suite 300 Golden, Colorado 80401, U.S.A.

(PENTAX Service Department)
250 North 54th Street Chandler, Arizona 85226, U.S.A.
(http://www.pentaximaging.com)

PENTAX Canada Inc. 1770 Argentia Road Mississauga, Ontario L5N 3S7, CANADA
(http://www.pentax.ca)

PENTAX Trading (SHANGHAI) Limited 23D, Jun Yao International Plaza, 789 Zhaojiabang Road, Xu Hui District, Shanghai, 200032 CHINA
(http://www.pentax.com.cn)

http://www.pentax.jp/english

• Specifications and external dimensions are subject to change without notice.

58192
Copyright © HOYA CORPORATION 2010
H02-201011 Printed in Philippines